



### CONFIGURATION MANUAL

# SIMOTICS M

## Main motors

1PH8

www.siemens.com/drives

# SIEMENS

Introduction	Ĩ
Fundamental safety instructions	2
Motor description	3
Mechanical properties	4
Motor components and options	5
Configuration	6
Technical data and characteristics	7
Preparing for use	8
Electrical connection	9
Dimension drawings	10
Appendix	Α

1

## SIMOTICS M

# Drive technology 1PH8 SIMOTICS M main motors

**Configuration Manual** 

### Legal information

### Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

### \land DANGER

indicates that death or severe personal injury will result if proper precautions are not taken.

### 🕂 WARNING

indicates that death or severe personal injury may result if proper precautions are not taken.

### $\bigwedge$ CAUTION

indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

#### NOTICE

indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

### **Qualified Personnel**

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

### **Proper use of Siemens products**

Note the following:

### M WARNING

Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

#### Trademarks

All names identified by <sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

### **Disclaimer of Liability**

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

# Table of contents

1	Introductio	on	7
	1.1	About SIMOTICS	7
	1.2 1.2.1 1.2.2 1.2.3 1.2.4	About this manual Content Target group Standard scope Websites of third-party companies	7 
	1.3	SIMOTICS documentation	8
	1.4	Documentation in the Internet	9
	1.5 1.5.1 1.5.2 1.5.3 1.5.4 1.5.5 1.5.6 1.5.7	Service and support Siemens Industry Online Support on the Web Siemens Industry Online Support on the road Feedback on the technical documentation mySupport documentation Technical support Training Spare parts services	
	1.6	Important product information	13
2	Fundamer	ntal safety instructions	17
	2.1	General safety instructions	17
	2.2	Equipment damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge	22
	2.3	Security information	22
	2.4	Residual risks of power drive systems	23
3	Motor des	cription	25
	3.1	Highlights and benefits	25
	3.2 3.2.1 3.2.2 3.2.3	Technical characteristics and environmental conditions Directives and standards Technical features Classifying environmental conditions according to climate classes	26 30
	3.3 3.3.1	Derating factors Reduction of the max. DC-link voltage	34 35
	3.4 3.4.1 3.4.2 3.4.3 3.4.4 3.4.5 3.4.6	Selection and ordering data Article No. suffixes for shaft height 80 to 160 Article No. suffixes for SH 80 Premium Performance Article No. supplements for SH 132 and 160, synchronous-reluctance Article No. suffixes for SH 180 to 280 Article No. suffixes for SH 280 Article No. supplement for shaft height 80 to 160 + holding brake DE	

	3.4.7 3.4.8	Article No. supplement for SH 132 and 160, synchronous-reluctance + holding brake Article No. supplements for SH 180 to 225 + holding brake	55
	3.4.9	Options	56
	3.5	Rating plate data	63
4	Mechanica	properties	67
	4.1 4.1.1 4.1.2	Cooling General Forced ventilation	67 67
	4.1.3	Water cooling	
	4.2	Degree of protection	
	4.3	Construction types	85
	4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3	Types of bearing Drive output types and bearing versions Bearing lifetime NDE bearings, insulated version (option L27)	86 91
	4.5	Shaft end	96
	4.6 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4	Mounting of rotating unions on 1PH8 hollow-shaft motors Rotor-supported rotating union Bearingless, frame-supported rotating union Mounting information and instructions Suggestion for an adapter for bearingless, frame-supported rotating unions	99 103 107
	4.7 4.7.1 4.7.2 4.7.3 4.7.4	Radial and axial forces Radial force Axial force Permissible radial and axial forces for 1PH808 Premium Performance Radial and axial force diagrams	111 113 115
	4.8	Radial eccentricity, concentricity and axial eccentricity	138
	4.9 4.9.1 4.9.2	Balancing Requirements Balancing 1PH8 motors with "Premium Performance" bearing version	140
	4.10 4.10.1 4.10.2 4.10.3 4.10.4 4.10.5	Vibration response Mounting and mounting instructions Natural frequency when mounted Misalignment Flywheels Vibration stressing	146 148 149 151
	4.11	Vibration severity grade	154
	4.12	Noise emission	155
5	Motor com	ponents and options	
-	5.1 5.1.1 5.1.2 5.1.2.1 5.1.2.1 5.1.2.2	Motor components Thermal motor protection Encoder Encoder overview Encoder connection for motors with a DRIVE-CLiQ interface	157 157 158 158

	5.1.2.3	Encoder connection for motors without DRIVE-CLiQ (12/17-pole)	
	5.1.2.4	Encoder assignment as a function of maximum permissible speeds	
	5.1.2.5	Incremental encoder HTL 1024 S/R or HTL 2048 S/R	
	5.1.2.6	Incremental encoders IC 2048 S/R, IN 512 S/R and IN 256 S/R	
	5.1.2.7	Absolute encoder AM 2048 S/R	
	5.2	Options	
	5.2.1	Overview of options	
	5.2.2	Sealing air connection (option Q12)	
	5.2.3	Protection against explosion (options M03 and M39)	
	5.2.4	Increased resistance to vibration (option L03)	
	5.2.5	Holding brake (option)	
	5.2.5.1	Properties	
	5.2.5.2	Mounted holding brake for SH 80 to SH 160	
	5.2.5.3	Mounted holding brake for SH 180 and SH 225	
	5.2.6 5.2.7	Anti-condensation heating (option K45) Condensation drain hole (option L12)	
	5.2.7	Higher number of grounding terminals in the terminal box (Q00)	
	5.2.9	Chain of PTC thermistors for alarm and trip (option A12)	
~			
6	Configura	ation	
	6.1	Configuring software	
	6.1.1	TST engineering tool (TIA-Selection-Tool)	203
	6.2	Procedure when engineering	204
	6.2.1	SINAMICS configuring procedure	204
	6.2.2	Specifying the duty cycle	206
	6.2.3	Selecting induction motors	
	6.2.4	Selecting synchronous motors	
	6.2.5	Selecting synchronous-reluctance motors	211
	6.3	Different rated points for induction motors	212
	6.4	Configuration for SINAMICS G	215
	6.5	Configuration for 1PH808 Premium Performance	216
7	Technical	data and characteristics	219
8	Preparing	J for use	221
9	Electrical	connection	223
	9.1	Permissible line system configurations	223
	9.2	Circuit diagram of the motor	223
	9.3	System integration	224
	9.3.1	SINAMICS drive I/O	224
	9.3.2	Connecting-up information	225
	9.3.3	Routing cables in a damp environment	
	9.3.4	Power connection	
	9.3.5	External fan	
	9.3.6	Signal connection	253
10	Dimensio	n drawings	257
	10.1	SIEMENS Product Configurator	257

Α	Appendix		259
	A.1	Description of terms	259
	A.2	Environmental compatibility	261

### Introduction

### 1.1 About SIMOTICS

### Description

SIMOTICS is the Siemens family of electric motors addressing the complete motor spectrum in Digital Industry.

### 1.2 About this manual

### 1.2.1 Content

#### Description

This Configuration Manual supports you when selecting motors for your application. The Configuration Manual refers to rules and guidelines for configuring motors.

To illustrate possible application areas for our products, typical use cases are listed in this product documentation and in the online help. These are purely exemplary and do not constitute a statement on the suitability of the respective product for applications in specific individual cases. Unless explicitly contractually agreed, Siemens assumes no liability for such suitability. Suitability for a particular application in specific individual cases must be assessed by the user, taking into account all technical, legal, and other requirements on a case-by-case basis. Always observe the descriptions of the technical properties and the relevant constraints of the respective product documentation.

This documentation should be kept in a location where it can be easily accessed and made available to the personnel responsible.

### Information regarding third-party products

### Note

#### Recommendation relating to third-party products

This document contains recommendations relating to third-party products. Siemens accepts the fundamental suitability of these third-party products.

You can use equivalent products from other manufacturers.

Siemens does not accept any warranty for the properties of third-party products.

1.3 SIMOTICS documentation

### 1.2.2 Target group

### Description

This Configuration Manual addresses:

- Planning engineers
- Design engineers
- Mechanical design engineers

### 1.2.3 Standard scope

### Description

This documentation describes the functionality of the standard scope. This scope may differ from the scope of the functionality of the system that is actually supplied. Please refer to the ordering documentation only for the functionality of the supplied drive system.

Further functions may be executable in the system, which are not explained in this documentation. However, there is no entitlement to these functions in the case of a new delivery or service.

This documentation does not contain all detailed information on all types of the product. Furthermore, this documentation cannot take into consideration every conceivable type of installation, operation and service/maintenance.

The machine manufacturer must document any additions or modifications they make to the product themselves.

### 1.2.4 Websites of third-party companies

### Description

This document may contain hyperlinks to third-party websites. Siemens is not responsible for and shall not be liable for these websites and their content. Siemens has no control over the information which appears on these websites and is not responsible for the content and information provided there. The user bears the risk for their use.

### 1.3 SIMOTICS documentation

### Description

Comprehensive documentation on SIMOTICS, SIMOGEAR and on the SINAMICS converter family are provided in Internet (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/ps/13204/man</u>).

You can display documents or download them in PDF and HTML5 format. The documentation is divided into the following categories:

Table 1-1 SIMOTICS / SIMOGEAR / SINAMICS documentation

Information	Documentation class <sup>1)</sup>	Content	Target group
General information	Configuration Man- ual	Rules, guidelines, and tools for config- uring products, systems, and plants. Also contains information on the oper- ating and ambient conditions for hard- ware and software, the use of func- tions, as well as on circuit diagrams and terminal diagrams and the instal- lation of software insofar as this is nec- essary for commissioning.	Planners, configuration engineers
Device information	Installation Instruc- tions	All relevant information on setting up, installing and cabling, as well as the required dimensional drawings and cir- cuit diagrams	Installation personnel, commissioning engineers, service and maintenance personnel
Basic information	Operating instruc- tions	Comprehensive collection of all infor- mation necessary for the safe opera- tion of products, plant/system parts and complete plants (IEC 82079)	Machine operators, plant operators
	Compact instruc- tions	Essential contents of the operating in- structions in a reduced and condensed form	Machine operators, plant operators
	Product Information	Information that only becomes known shortly before or even after start of de- livery and is therefore not included in the associated user documentation	Planners, configuration engineers, technologists, installation personnel, constructors; commissioning engi- neers, machine operators, program- mers, service and maintenance per- sonnel
	Online help	Instructions for configuring, program- ming, and commissioning	Configuration engineers, program- mers, commissioning engineers

<sup>1)</sup> Not all documentation classes are available for every SIMOTICS / SIMOGEAR / SINAMICS product.

### 1.4 Documentation in the Internet

The manuals for the motors, gearboxes and geared motors are available here: SI web page (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109813641</u>)



1.5 Service and support

### 1.5 Service and support

### 1.5.1 Siemens Industry Online Support on the Web

### Description

The following is available via Siemens Industry Online Support (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/</u>), among others:

- Product support
- Global forum for information and best practice sharing between users and specialists
- Local contact persons via the contact person database (→ Contact)
- Information about field services, repairs, spare parts, and much more ( $\rightarrow$  Services)
- Search for product info
- Important topics at a glance
- FAQs (frequently asked questions)
- Application examples
- Manuals
- Downloads
- Compatibility tool
- Newsletters with information about your products
- Catalogs/brochures

### 1.5.2 Siemens Industry Online Support on the road

### Description



Figure 1-1 "Siemens Industry Online Support" app



The "Industry Online Support" app supports you in the following areas, for example:

- Resolving problems when executing a project
- Troubleshooting when faults develop
- Expanding a system or planning a new system

Furthermore, you have access to the Technical Forum and other articles that our experts have drawn up:

- FAQs
- Application examples
- Manuals
- Certificates
- Product announcements and much more

There is a Data Matrix code on the nameplate of your product. You can obtain technical information about the device if you scan the code using the "Industry Online Support" app.

The app is available for Apple iOS and Android.

#### See also

App (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/sc/2067)

### 1.5.3 Feedback on the technical documentation

#### Description

We welcome your questions, suggestions, and corrections for this technical documentation. Please use the "Provide feedback" link at the end of the entries in Siemens Industry Online Support.

#### Requests and feedback

What do you want to do?

- You have a technical question / problem: Ask the Technical Support
   <u>Create support request</u>
- You want to discuss in our forum and exchange experiences with other users
   > Go to the Forum
- You want to create CAx data for one or more products
   <u>Go to the CAx download manager</u>
- You would like to send us feedback on this Entry

> Provide feedback

Note: The reedback always relates to the current entry / product. Your message will be forwarded to our technical editors working in the Online Support. In a few days, you will receive a response if your feedback requires one. If we have no further questions, you will not

Figure 1-2 Requests and feedback

1.5 Service and support

### 1.5.4 mySupport documentation

### Description

With the "mySupport documentation" web-based system, you can compile your own individual documentation based on Siemens content and adapt this for your own machine documentation.

To start the application, click the "My Documentation" tile on the mySupport homepage (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/my</u>):

#### mySupport Links and Tools



Figure 1-3 mySupport

The configured manual can be exported in the PDF or XML format.

Siemens content that supports the mySupport documentation can be identified by the "Configure" link.

### 1.5.5 Technical support

### Description

Your routes to technical support (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/sc/4868</u>):

- Support Request (<u>https://www.siemens.com/SupportRequest</u>)
- Contact person database (<u>https://www.automation.siemens.com/aspa\_app</u>)
- "Industry Online Support" mobile app

The Support Request is the most important input channel for questions relating to products from Siemens Industry. This will assign your request a unique ticket number for tracking purposes. The Support Request offers you:

- Direct access to technical experts
- Recommended solutions for various questions (e.g. FAQs)
- Status tracking of your requests

Technical support also assists you in some cases via remote support (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/view/106665159</u>) to resolve your requests. A Support representative will assist you in diagnosing or resolving the problem through screen transfer.

More information on the Support service packages is available on the Internet via the following address (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/sc/4869</u>).

### 1.5.6 Training

### Description

SITRAIN – Digital Industry Academy offers a comprehensive range of training courses on Siemens industrial products – directly from the manufacturer, for all industries and use cases, for all knowledge levels from beginner to expert.

More information can be found on the Internet via the following address (<u>https://www.siemens.com/sitrain</u>).

### 1.5.7 Spare parts services

### Description

By using the online spare parts service "Spares on Web", you ensure the smooth operation of your product. The spare parts service is aimed at the following:

- Improved spare parts inventories by balancing stock and spare parts on call
- Minimized downtimes during a plant standstill
- Reduced costs

More information can be found on the Internet via the following address (<u>https://www.sow.siemens.com</u>).

### **1.6** Important product information

The 1PH8 three-phase motors are used as industrial drives for machine tools and production machines.

Based on seamless technology, 1PH8 motors can be used in conjunction with the SINAMICS S120 or G120 drive system (version PM 240) in a wide range of applications:

- Compact machine tools
- Complex machining centers and lathes
- Milling machines with full enclosure
- Milling spindles subject to high loads

1.6 Important product information

- Counterspindles or power tools for turning machines
- Direct power tools with internal cooling
- Main drives in presses and extruders, converting applications
- Rotary axes in the paper and printing industry
- For use in crane systems (power house)
- Flying shears, coilers and winder drives
- Customized machines

### M WARNING

### Danger to life and material damage when incorrectly used

If you do not use the motors or their components correctly, there is a risk of death, severe injury and/or material damage.

- Only use the motors for industrial or commercial plants and systems.
- If, in an exceptional case, you do not use the motors in industrial or commercial plants and systems, ensure that increased requirements are complied with (e.g. regarding touch protection).
- Do not use the motors in hazardous areas (where there is a risk of explosion), if the motors have not been expressly released and authorized for these types of applications. Comply with the separately added supplementary notes.
- Only use the motors and their components for the applications specified by Siemens.
- Protect the motors against dirt and contact with aggressive substances.
- Ensure that the site conditions comply with the rating plate data and the conditions specified in this documentation. Take into consideration deviations regarding approvals or country-specific regulations.
- If you have any questions regarding the intended use, please contact your local sales partner.
- If you wish to use special versions and design variants, whose technical data differ from the motors described in this document, then first contact your local sales partner.

### \Lambda WARNING

### Danger to life for wearers of active implants due to magnetic and electrical fields

Persons with active implants, for example cardiac pacemakers, standing close to the motors can be negatively affected, which could cause serious damage to their health or even death.

• If you are affected, stay at a minimum distance of 500 mm from the motors (tripping threshold for static magnetic fields of 0.5 mT according to the Directive 2013/35/EU).

The motors are designed for operation in covered areas under normal climatic conditions, such as those found in production environments.

1.6 Important product information

See also

Classifying environmental conditions according to climate classes (Page 33)

### Introduction

1.6 Important product information

# **Fundamental safety instructions**

### 2.1 General safety instructions



### MARNING WARNING

### Electric shock and danger to life due to other energy sources

Touching live components can result in death or severe injury.

- Only work on electrical devices when you are qualified for this job.
- Always observe the country-specific safety rules.

Generally, the following steps apply when establishing safety:

- 1. Prepare for disconnection. Notify all those who will be affected by the procedure.
- 2. Isolate the drive system from the power supply and take measures to prevent it being switched back on again.
- 3. Wait until the discharge time specified on the warning labels has elapsed.
- 4. Check that there is no voltage between any of the power connections, and between any of the power connections and the protective conductor connection.
- 5. Check whether the existing auxiliary supply circuits are de-energized.
- 6. Ensure that the motors cannot move.
- 7. Identify all other dangerous energy sources, e.g. compressed air, hydraulic systems, or water. Switch the energy sources to a safe state.
- 8. Check that the correct drive system is completely locked.

After you have completed the work, restore the operational readiness in the inverse sequence.



### 🔨 WARNING

#### Electric shock due to connection to an unsuitable power supply

When equipment is connected to an unsuitable power supply, exposed components may carry a hazardous voltage. Contact with hazardous voltage can result in severe injury or death.

• Only use power supplies that provide SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) or PELV- (Protective Extra Low Voltage) output voltages for all connections and terminals of the electronics modules.



### \Lambda warning

### Electric shock due to damaged motors or devices

Improper handling of motors or devices can damage them.

Hazardous voltages can be present at the enclosure or at exposed components on damaged motors or devices.

- Ensure compliance with the limit values specified in the technical data during transport, storage and operation.
- Do not use any damaged motors or devices.



### 

### Electric shock due to unconnected cable shield

Hazardous touch voltages can occur through capacitive cross-coupling due to unconnected cable shields.

• As a minimum, connect cable shields and the conductors of power cables that are not used (e.g. brake cores) at one end at the grounded housing potential.



### 

### Electric shock if there is no ground connection

For missing or incorrectly implemented protective conductor connection for devices with protection class I, high voltages can be present at open, exposed parts, which when touched, can result in death or severe injury.

• Ground the device in compliance with the applicable regulations.



### \Lambda warning

### Arcing when a plug connection is opened during operation

Opening a plug connection when a system is operation can result in arcing that may cause serious injury or death.

• Only open plug connections when the equipment is in a voltage-free state, unless it has been explicitly stated that they can be opened in operation.

### NOTICE

### Property damage due to loose power connections

Insufficient tightening torques or vibration can result in loose power connections. This can result in damage due to fire, device defects or malfunctions.

- Tighten all power connections to the prescribed torque.
- Check all power connections at regular intervals, particularly after equipment has been transported.

### NOTICE

### Damage to equipment due to unsuitable tightening tools.

Unsuitable tightening tools or fastening methods can damage the screws of the equipment.

- Only use screw inserts that exactly match the screw head.
- Tighten the screws with the torque specified in the technical documentation.
- Use a torque wrench or a mechanical precision nut runner with a dynamic torque sensor and speed limitation system.
- Adjust the tools used regularly.

### M WARNING

#### Unexpected machine movement caused by radio devices or mobile phones

Using radio devices, cellphones, or mobile WLAN devices in the immediate vicinity of the components can result in equipment malfunction. Malfunctions may impair the functional safety of machines and can therefore put people in danger or lead to property damage.

- Therefore, if you move closer than 20 cm to the components, be sure to switch off radio devices, cellphones or WLAN devices.
- Use the "SIEMENS Industry Online Support app" only on equipment that has already been switched off.

### MARNING 🔨

#### Unrecognized dangers due to missing or illegible warning labels

Dangers might not be recognized if warning labels are missing or illegible. Unrecognized dangers may cause accidents resulting in serious injury or death.

- Check that the warning labels are complete based on the documentation.
- Attach any missing warning labels to the components, where necessary in the national language.
- Replace illegible warning labels.

### 

### Unexpected movement of machines caused by inactive safety functions

Inactive or non-adapted safety functions can trigger unexpected machine movements that may result in serious injury or death.

- Observe the information in the appropriate product documentation before commissioning.
- Carry out a safety inspection for functions relevant to safety on the entire system, including all safety-related components.
- Ensure that the safety functions used in your drives and automation tasks are adjusted and activated through appropriate parameterizing.
- Perform a function test.
- Only put your plant into live operation once you have guaranteed that the functions relevant to safety are running correctly.

### Note

### Important Safety instructions for Safety Integrated

If you want to use Safety Integrated functions, you must observe the Safety instructions in the Safety Integrated documentation.

### MARNING 🔨

### Active implant malfunctions due to electromagnetic fields

Electromagnetic fields (EMF) are generated by the operation of electrical power equipment, such as transformers, converters, or motors. People with pacemakers or implants are at particular risk in the immediate vicinity of this equipment.

• If this affects you, maintain the minimum distance to such equipment that is specified in the "Important product information" chapter.



### M WARNING

#### Active implant malfunctions due to permanent-magnet fields

Even when switched off, electric motors with permanent magnets represent a potential risk for persons with heart pacemakers or implants if they are close to converters/motors.

- If this affects you, maintain the minimum distance to such equipment that is specified in the "Important product information" chapter.
- When transporting or storing permanent-magnet motors always use the original packing materials with the warning labels attached.
- Clearly mark the storage locations with the appropriate warning labels.
- IATA regulations must be observed when transported by air.

### M WARNING

### Injury caused by moving or ejected parts

Contact with moving motor parts or drive output elements and the ejection of loose motor parts (e.g. feather keys) out of the motor enclosure can result in severe injury or death.

- Remove any loose parts or secure them so that they cannot be flung out.
- Do not touch any moving parts.
- Safeguard all moving parts using the appropriate safety guards.

### 

### Fire due to incorrect operation of the motor

When incorrectly operated and in the case of a fault, the motor can overheat resulting in fire and smoke. This can result in severe injury or death. Further, excessively high temperatures destroy motor components and result in increased failures as well as shorter service lives of motors.

- Operate the motor according to the relevant specifications.
- Only operate the motors in conjunction with effective temperature monitoring.
- Immediately switch off the motor if excessively high temperatures occur.



#### 

### Burns and thermal damage caused by hot surfaces

Temperatures above 100  $^\circ \rm C$  may occur on the surfaces of motors, converters, and other drive components.

Touching hot surfaces may result in burns. Hot surfaces may damage or destroy temperature sensitive parts.

- Ensure that temperature-sensitive parts do not come into contact with hot surfaces.
- Mount drive components so that they are not accessible during operation.

Measures when maintenance is required:

- Allow drive components to cool off before starting any work.
- Use appropriate personnel protection equipment, e.g. gloves.

2.3 Security information

### 2.2

# Equipment damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD) are individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices that may be damaged by either electric fields or electrostatic discharge.



### NOTICE

### Equipment damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electric fields or electrostatic discharge can cause malfunctions through damaged individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices.

- Only pack, store, transport and send electronic components, modules or devices in their original packaging or in other suitable materials, e.g conductive foam rubber of aluminum foil.
- Only touch components, modules and devices when you are grounded by one of the following methods:
  - Wearing an ESD wrist strap
  - Wearing ESD shoes or ESD grounding straps in ESD areas with conductive flooring
- Only place electronic components, modules or devices on conductive surfaces (table with ESD surface, conductive ESD foam, ESD packaging, ESD transport container).

### 2.3 Security information

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement – and continuously maintain – a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Siemens' products and solutions constitute one element of such a concept.

Customers are responsible for preventing unauthorized access to their plants, systems, machines and networks. Such systems, machines and components should only be connected to an enterprise network or the internet if and to the extent such a connection is necessary and only when appropriate security measures (e.g. firewalls and/or network segmentation) are in place.

For additional information on industrial security measures that may be implemented, please visit

https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity.

Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends that product updates are applied as soon as they are available and that the latest product versions are used. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply the latest updates may increase customer's exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Security RSS Feed under

https://www.siemens.com/cert.

Further information is provided on the Internet:

#### 2.4 Residual risks of power drive systems

Industrial Security Configuration Manual (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/108862708</u>)

### 🕂 WARNING

#### Unsafe operating states resulting from software manipulation

Software manipulations, e.g. viruses, Trojans, or worms, can cause unsafe operating states in your system that may lead to death, serious injury, and property damage.

- Keep the software up to date.
- Incorporate the automation and drive components into a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept for the installation or machine.
- Make sure that you include all installed products into the holistic industrial security concept.
- Protect files stored on exchangeable storage media from malicious software by with suitable protection measures, e.g. virus scanners.
- On completion of commissioning, check all security-related settings.

### 2.4 Residual risks of power drive systems

When assessing the machine or system-related risk in accordance with the respective local regulations (e.g. EC Machinery Directive), the machine manufacturer or system integrator must take into account the following residual risks emanating from the control and drive components of a drive system:

- 1. Unintentional movements of driven machine or system components during commissioning, operation, maintenance, and repairs caused by, for example,
  - Hardware faults and/or software errors in the sensors, control system, actuators, and connections
  - Response times of the control system and of the drive
  - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
  - Condensation/conductive contamination
  - Parameterization, programming, cabling, and installation errors
  - Use of wireless devices/mobile phones in the immediate vicinity of electronic components
  - External influences/damage
  - X-ray, ionizing radiation and cosmic radiation
- 2. Unusually high temperatures, including open flames, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc., can occur inside and outside the components under fault conditions caused by, for example:
  - Component failure
  - Software errors
  - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
  - External influences/damage

2.4 Residual risks of power drive systems

- 3. Hazardous shock voltages caused by, for example:
  - Component failure
  - Influence during electrostatic charging
  - Induction of voltages in moving motors
  - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
  - Condensation/conductive contamination
  - External influences/damage
- 4. Electrical, magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated in operation that can pose a risk to people with a pacemaker, implants or metal replacement joints, etc., if they are too close
- 5. Release of environmental pollutants or emissions as a result of improper operation of the system and/or failure to dispose of components safely and correctly
- 6. Influence of network-connected communication systems, e.g. ripple-control transmitters or data communication via the network
- 7. Motors for use in potentially explosive areas: When moving components such as bearings become worn, this can cause enclosure components to exhibit unexpectedly high temperatures during operation, creating a hazard in areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere.

For more information about the residual risks of the drive system components, see the relevant sections in the technical user documentation.

## **Motor description**

### 3.1 Highlights and benefits

### Overview

The SIMOTICS M-1PH8 motor series, referred to as 1PH8 in the following, is a motor generation developed for universal implementation in plants and machines with motion control applications. The motors are based on a flexible, modular principle and are available as induction, synchronous-reluctance and compact synchronous variants, with either forced ventilation or water cooling.

In comparison to the freely selectable performance of vector and servo control with the SINAMICS S120 drive system, it is possible to select between induction, synchronous-reluctance or synchronous variants in the case of the new SIMOTICS M-1PH8 motor series.

Thanks to this flexible interplay between converter and motor, it is now even easier to implement applications which involve

- extreme duty cycles,
- short rise times,
- high precision with respect to speed, torque and positioning.

The motors have been designed specifically for use in conjunction with the SINAMICS S120 drive system. Depending on the control requirements, appropriate encoder systems are available for the motors for sensing the motor speed and indirect position.

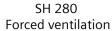
Encoder systems for C-axis operation are also available for machine tools.

1PH8 motors are available in two different cooling types:

- Forced ventilation
- Water cooling









### **Highlights and benefits**

- Wide power spectrum with low envelope dimensions
- Wide speed control ranges
- High degree of flexibility due to the choice of
  - Induction, synchronous-reluctance or synchronous version
  - Forced ventilation or water cooling
  - Solid or hollow shaft
  - Various bearing concepts
  - Different encoder types for speed control and precision positioning
- Outstanding performance characteristics
  - Maximum speeds up to 24,000 r/min
  - Minimal torque oscillations up to 10 µm
  - Excellent vibration magnitudes
  - High dynamic response (short ramp-up times)
- Low noise emission
- Simple and flexible connection system
- Commissioning with electronic type plate and DRIVE-CLiQ interface

### 3.2 Technical characteristics and environmental conditions

### 3.2.1 Directives and standards

The chapter lists the standards and directives that are applicable for the motor and which the motor complies with.

### Standards that are complied with

### Note

The standards listed in this manual are not dated.

You can take the currently relevant and valid dates from the Declaration of Conformity.

The motors of the type series SIMOTICS S, SIMOTICS M, SIMOTICS L, SIMOTICS T, SIMOTICS A, called "SIMOTICS motor series" below, fulfill the requirements of the following directives and standards:

- EN 60034-1 Rotating electrical machines Dimensioning and operating behavior
- EN 60204-1 Safety of machinery Electrical equipment of machines; general requirements

Where applicable, the SIMOTICS motor series are in conformance with the following parts of EN 60034:

Feature	Standard
Degree of protection	EN 60034-5
Cooling <sup>1)</sup>	EN 60034-6
Type of construction	EN 60034-7
Connection designations	EN 60034-8
Noise levels 1)	EN 60034-9
Temperature monitoring	EN 60034-11
Vibration severity grades <sup>1)</sup>	EN 60034-14

<sup>1)</sup> Standard part, e.g. cannot be used for built-in motors.

#### **Relevant directives**

The following directives are relevant for SIMOTICS motors.

#### **European Low-Voltage Directive**

CE

SIMOTICS motors comply with the Low-Voltage Directive 2014/35/EU.

#### **European Machinery Directive**

SIMOTICS motors do not fall within the scope covered by the Machinery Directive.

However, the use of the products in a typical machine application has been fully assessed for compliance with the main regulations in this directive concerning health and safety.

#### **European EMC Directive**

SIMOTICS motors do not fall within the scope covered by the EMC Directive. The products are not considered as devices in the sense of the directive. Installed and operated with a converter, the motor - together with the Power Drive System - must comply with the requirements laid down in the applicable EMC Directive.

#### **European RoHS Directive**

The SIMOTICS motor series complies with the Directive 2011/65/EU regarding limiting the use of certain hazardous substances.

### European Directive on Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE)

SIMOTICS motors comply with the 2012/19/EU directive on taking back and recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment.

# European Directive 2005/32/EC defining requirements for environmentally friendly design of electric motors

The SIMOTICS motor series is not subject to Regulation (EC) No. 640/2009 for implementation of this directive.

# European Directive 2009/125/EC defining ecodesign requirements of electric motors and speed controls

The SIMOTICS motor series is not subject to (EU) Regulation 2019/1781 for implementation of this directive.

### **Eurasian conformity**

SIMOTICS motors comply with the requirements of the Russia/Belarus/Kazakhstan (EAC) customs union.

### **China Compulsory Certification**

SIMOTICS motors do not fall within the scope covered by the China Compulsory Certification (CCC).

CCC negative certification (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/de/view/109769143)

### **Underwriters Laboratories**

SIMOTICS motors are generally in compliance with UL and cUL as components of motor applications, and are appropriately listed.

Specifically developed motors and functions are the exceptions in this case. Here, it is crucial that you carefully observe the content of the quotation and that there is a UL or cUL mark on the rating plate!

#### **Quality systems**

Siemens employs a quality management system that meets the requirements of ISO 9001 and ISO 14001.

Certificates for SIMOTICS motors can be downloaded from the Internet at the following link:

Certificates for SIMOTICS motors (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/ps/13347/</u> cert)

#### **China RoHS**

SIMOTICS motors comply with the China RoHS.

You can find more information at:

China RoHS (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/de/view/109738670/en)



Name of the standard	Minimum allowable values for energy efficiency and energy efficiency class of perma- nent-magnet synchronous motors (GB30253).
Date of entry into force	July 1, 2020
Affected motors	Permanent-magnet synchronous motors (without integrated brake) with a rated pow- er of 0.55 kW to 90 kW and a rated speed of 500 r/min to 3000 r/min controlled from a converter with variable frequency on a line supply less than 1000 V.
Motor requirements	As of the implementation date of the guideline, all motors involved must have the "China Energy Label".
Affected Siemens products	The SIEMENS motors involved are subject to the requirements of Guideline GB30253.

### **China Energy Label**

Examples of the "China Energy Label" and the motor rating plate:

### **China Energy Label**



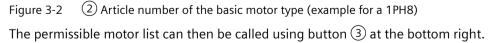
Figure 3-1 (1) Article number (diagram showing a typical 1PH8)

### Motor rating plate

The specified "1PH8184-2DD0" motor only serves as representative of the 1PH8 motor list.

This explanation is provided to the left of the Chinese title (specified for Chinese custom authorities).





UK

3.2 Technical characteristics and environmental conditions

The QR code on the China Energy Label includes a link to the listed motor folder.

Example: By clicking on the link http://elmm.bbqk.com/index.html?a=hb6zs (<u>https://ela.bbqk.com/index.html?uid=hb6zs</u>), a folder opens with all of the listed 1PH8 motors, shaft heights 180 and 225.

#### Note

The article number ① stated on the China Energy Label corresponds to the article number of the basic motor type ② (boldface type) in the motor article number.

### **UKCA - United Kingdom Conformity Assessed**

The SIMOTICS motor series satisfies the conformity requirements for England, Wales and Scotland.

### 3.2.2 Technical features

The technical features specified in the tables below refer to basic 1PH8 motors and are applicable for induction, synchronous-reluctance and synchronous variants.

Depending on the electrical and mechanical configuration, it is possible to add options to the basic model in order to adapt it to a specific drive application (refer to Options, Selection and Ordering data).

Insulation of the stator winding in accordance with EN 60034–1 (IEC 60034–1)	For an ambient temperature of up to 40 °C SH 80 to SH 280 temperature class 180 (H)	
Cooling in accordance with EN 60034-6 (IEC 60034-6)	Forced ventilation SH 80 SH 225: Fan mounted axially at NDE SH 280: Fan mounted radially at NDE	
Temperature monitoring	Temperature sensor in t	he stator winding
	SH 180 SH 280: Addit	tional temperature sensor as a standby
Fan supply voltage (see "Technical data")	SH 80: SH 100 SH 160: SH 180 SH 225: SH 280:	1 AC 230 V 50/60 Hz, 1 AC 265 V 60 Hz 3 AC 400 V, 50/60 Hz, 3 AC 480 V 60 Hz 1 AC 200 V 277 V, 50/60 Hz (EC fan) 3 AC 380 V 480 V, 50/60 Hz (EC fan)
Type in accordance with EN 60034-7 (IEC 60034-7)	SH 80: SH 100 SH 280:	IM B3, IM B5 IM B3, IM B5, IM B35
Degree of protection in accordance with EN 60034-5 (IEC 60034-5)	SH 80 SH 280: SH 180 SH 280:	IP55 IP23
Shaft extension at the drive end (DE) in accordance with DIN 748-3 (IEC 60072-1)	Plain shaft or feather ke for full key or half-key ba	
Shaft and flange accuracy in accordance with DIN 42955 (IEC 60072-1) <sup>1)</sup>	SH 80 SH 160 :SH 180 SH 280:	Tolerance R (reduced), SPECIAL <sup>2)</sup> Tolerance N (normal)
Vibration magnitudes in accordance with Siemens / EN 60034-14 (IEC 60034-14)	SH 80 SH 160 SH 180 SH 280	Level R/A, SPECIAL/B Level A

#### Table 3-1 Forced ventilation

Sound pressure level	SH 80 SH 132:	70 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 4 kHz and a		
in accordance with DIN EN ISO 1680, max.	51100 511 152.	speed range up to 5000 r/min		
tolerance +3 dB, external fan 50 Hz	SH 160:	73 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 4 kHz and a speed range up to 5000 r/min		
	SH 180 and SH 225:	73 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz and a speed range: Forced ventilation (IP55)		
		• SH180 to 5000 r/min		
		• SH225 to 3500 r/min		
		Open-circuit ventilation (IP23)		
		• SH180 to 3000 r/min		
		• SH225 to 2000 r/min		
	SH 280	74 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz and a speed range: up to 3300 r/min		
		Forced ventilation (IP55)		
		• SH280 to 3300 r/min		
		Open-circuit ventilation (IP23)		
		• SH280 to 2800 r/min		
Bearing versions and maximum speeds	See Chapter "Mechan	ical properties of the motors"		
Encoder systems, built-in	Absolute encoder	EnDat 2048 S/R (AM2048 S/R encoder)		
without DRIVE-CLiQ interface	Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 2048 S/R with C and D tracks (en- coder IC2048S/R)			
	<ul> <li>Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 512 S/R without C and D tracks (encoder IN512S/R)</li> </ul>			
	Incremental encod (encoder IN2565/I	der sin/cos 1 Vpp 256 S/R without C and D track R)		
	Incremental encod	Incremental encoder HTL 1024 S/R (encoder HTL1024 S/R)		
	Incremental encod	der HTL 2048 S/R (encoder HTL2048 S/R)		
Encoder systems, built-in with	Absolute encoder     AM22DQ)	22 bit singleturn + 12 bit multiturn (encoder		
DRIVE-CLiQ interface	Incremental encod     IC22DQ)	der 22 bit with commutation position (encoder		
	Incremental encoder 20 bit without commutation position (encoder IN20DQ)			
	<ul> <li>Incremental encod IN19DQ)</li> </ul>	Incremental encoder 19 bit without commutation position (encoder		
Connection	(mating connector no SH 80 to SH 132: Terr SH 160 to SH 225: Ter	Connector for signals or DRIVE-CLiQ interface (mating connector not included in scope of supply) SH 80 to SH 132: Terminal box NDE top / power connector SH 160 to SH 225: Terminal box NDE top		
	SH 280: Terminal box			
Rating plate (adhesive label)	1x glued on the moto 1x supplied loose in t	he terminal box		
Paint finish	•	Standard paint finish anthracite RAL 7016		
Options		ction and Ordering data		
Approvals, in accordance with	cURus			

1) Radial eccentricity of the shaft end, coaxiality of the centering wheel and axial eccentricity of the mounting flange with respect to the axis of the shaft end.

2) Applicable for "Performance", "High Performance" and "Premium Performance" versions

SH = Shaft Height S/R = Signal/Revolution DE = Drive End (motor drive end) NDE = Non-Drive End (motor fan end)

#### Table 3-2 Water cooling

Insulation of the stator winding according to EN 60034–1 (IEC 60034–1)		For a coolant intake temperature of up to +30 $^{\circ}$ C SH 80 SH 280: Temperature class 180 (H) <sup>3)</sup>	
Cooling in accordance with EN 60034-6 (IEC 60034-6)	Water cooling max. Cooling water pressure at inlet: 6 bar connection thread at NDE (for additional data, see Chapter "Mechanical properties of the motors")		
Temperature monitoring	Temperature sensor in th	ne stator winding	
	SH 180 SH 280: Addit	ional temperature sensor as a standby	
Type in accordance with EN 60034-7 (IEC 60034-7)	SH 80: SH 100 SH 280:	IM B3, IM B5 IM B3, IM B5, IM B35	
Degree of protection in accordance with EN 60034-5 (IEC 60034-5)	SH 80 SH 160: SH 180 SH 280:	IP65 IP55	
Shaft extension at the drive end (DE) in accordance with DIN 748-3 (IEC 60072-1)	Plain shaft or feather key for full key or half-key ba		
Shaft and flange accuracy in accordance with DIN 42955 (IEC 60072-1) <sup>1)</sup>	SH 80 SH 160: SH 180 SH 280:	Tolerance R/A (reduced), SPECIAL <sup>2)</sup> Tolerance N (normal)	
Vibration magnitudes in accordance with Siemens / EN 60034-14 (IEC 60034-14)	SH 80 SH 160 :SH 180 SH 280:	Level R/A, SPECIAL <sup>2)</sup> Level A	
Sound pressure level in accordance with DIN EN ISO 1680, max.	SH 80 SH 132:	68 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 4 kHz and a speed range up to 5000 r/min	
Tolerance +3 dB	SH 160:	69 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 4 kHz and a speed range up to 5000 r/min	
	SH 180 and SH 225:	70 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 2 or 4 kHz and speed ranges:	
		• SH 180 to 5000 r/min	
		• SH 225 to 4500 r/min	
	SH 280:	72 dB at a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz and a speed range up to 3300 r/min	
	(For further data, see Se	ction "Mechanical properties of the motors")	
Bearing versions and maximum speeds	See Chapter "Mechanical properties of the motors"		

Encoder systems, built-in	Absolute encoder EnDat 2048 S/R (AM2048 S/R encoder)
without DRIVE-CLiQ interface	<ul> <li>Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 2048 S/R with C and D tracks (en- coder IC2048S/R)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 512 S/R without C and D tracks (encoder IN512S/R)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 256 S/R without C and D track (encoder IN256S/R)</li> </ul>
	• Incremental encoder HTL 1024 S/R (encoder HTL1024 S/R)
	• Incremental encoder HTL 2048 S/R (encoder HTL2048 S/R)
Encoder systems, built-in with	Absolute encoder 22 bit singleturn + 12 bit multiturn (encoder AM22DQ)
DRIVE-CLiQ interface	<ul> <li>Incremental encoder 22 bit with commutation position (encoder IC22DQ)</li> </ul>
	Incremental encoder 20 bit without commutation position (encod- er IN20DQ)
	Incremental encoder 19 bit without commutation position (encod- er IN19DQ)
Connection	Connector for signals or DRIVE-CLiQ interface (mating connector not included in scope of supply) SH 80 SH 132: Terminal box NDE top / power connector SH 160 SH 280: Terminal box NDE top
Rating plate (adhesive label)	1x glued on the motor 1x supplied loose in the terminal box
Paint finish	Standard paint finish anthracite RAL 7016
Options	See Options and Selection and Ordering data
Approvals, in accordance with	cURus

1) Radial eccentricity of the shaft end, coaxiality of the centering wheel and axial eccentricity of the mounting flange with respect to the axis of the shaft end.

2) Applicable for "Performance", "High Performance" and "Premium Performance" versions

3) Based on the design, the following motors have temperature class 155 (F):

1PH8107-1 1PH8138-2 1PH8107-1 1PH8164 1PH8166 1PH8168

SH = Shaft height

S/R = signals/revolution

DE = Drive End (motor drive side; A side of the motor)

NDE = Non Drive End (motor fan side; B side of the motor)

### 3.2.3 Classifying environmental conditions according to climate classes

You can classify the environmental conditions for stationary use at weather-protected locations according to standard DIN IEC 60721-3-3. The environmental parameters and their limit values are defined in various classes in this standard.

### 3.3 Derating factors

You can assign the SIMOTICS M-1PH8 main motors to climate class 3K4 with the exception of the environmental parameter "condensation". Condensation is not permissible.

The higher the last number in the climate class  $3K\Box$ , the greater the requirements of the motor.

	Table 3-3	Environmental conditions are based on climate class 3K4
--	-----------	---

Envi	ronmental parameter	Unit	3K4 class
a)	Low air temperature	°C	+ 5
b)	High air temperature	°C	+ 40
c)	Low relative humidity	%	5
d)	High relative humidity	%	95
e)	Low absolute humidity	g/m <sup>3</sup>	1
f)	High absolute humidity	g/m³	29
g)	Rate of temperature change <sup>1)</sup>	°C/min	0.5
h)	Low air pressure	kPa	70
i)	High air pressure	kPa	106
j)	Solar radiation <sup>3)</sup>	W/m <sup>2</sup>	700
k)	Thermal radiation	-	2)
I)	Movement of the air	m/s	1.0
m)	Condensation	-	Not permissible
n)	Wind-driven precipitation (rain, snow, hail, etc.)	-	-
o)	Water (other than rain)	-	2)
p)	Formation of ice	-	-

#### <sup>1)</sup> Averaged over a period of 5 min

<sup>2)</sup> See types of protection

<sup>3)</sup> In Central Europe, the midday sun stands at 60 ° to 65 ° and, in ideal weather conditions, shines with an irradiance of approx. 700 watts/square meter. In winter, the angles are only 13 ° to 18 ° and, even at noon, the irradiance is only approx. 247 watts/ square meter.

You will find additional data on the ambient conditions, such as ambient temperatures or conditions for transport and storage of the motors, in the relevant chapters of this documentation.

### 3.3 Derating factors

### Derating for ambient/coolant temperature

Operation: T = -15 °C bis +40 °C (without restriction) Under conditions other than those specified above (ambient temperature > 40 °C or installation altitude > 1000 m above sea level), the permissible torque/power reduction must be considered (see Chapter "Ambient/coolant temperature (Page 67)")

### Derating for coolant inlet temperature

The motors are designed for operation up to a cooling water inlet temperature of +30 °C, provided that all of the specified motor data is complied with. If the inlet temperature of the cooling water deviates from this, the continuous torque will change (see Chapter "Cooling water inlet temperature (Page 71)").

### Derating factors for power and signal cables

The current-carrying capacity of PVC/PUR-insulated copper cables is specified for cable installation types B1, B2, C and E under continuous operating conditions with reference to an ambient air temperature of 40° C. For other ambient temperatures, the corresponding derating factors must be considered (see Chapter "Derating factors for power and signal cables (Page 228)").

### 3.3.1 Reduction of the max. DC-link voltage

At installation altitudes of 2000 m above sea level or higher, the voltage stress on the motors must be reduced accordingly based on the table "Factors for reducing the maximum DC-link voltage" (reciprocal values from EN 60664-1 Table A. 2).

Table 3-4	Factors fo	r reducina	the maxim	um DC-link voltage
	1 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	reducing	the maxin	ium DC mik vonage

Installation altitude above sea level up to	Factor
m	
2000	1
3000	0.877
4000	0.775
5000	0.656
6000	0.588
7000	0.513
8000	0.444

As the DC link voltage is reduced, the converter output voltage also decreases. This reduces the working range in the torque-speed diagram.

You will find the torque-speed diagrams in this Chapter "Technical data."

Operation in a vacuum is not permissible because of the low dielectric strength and poor heat dissipation.

# 3.4 Selection and ordering data

The Article No. supplements specified in the tables below define the ordering logic for 1PH8 motors and apply to induction and synchronous motors.

The Article No. supplements are also in the catalogs. These supplements correspond to the technical selection and ordering data of these catalogs.

Supplementary to the information in the catalogs, the technical selection and ordering data are integrated in Chapter "Technical data and characteristics" of this Configuration Manual.

Depending on the electrical and mechanical configuration, Z options can be appended to the Article No. suffixes.

# 3.4.1 Article No. suffixes for shaft height 80 to 160

Descriptions		Dat	a p	os	itio	n in	Artic	le No	<b>)</b> .	1												
		1	2	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
		1	P	•	Н	8																
Shaft height 80							0	8														
Shaft height 100							1	0														
Shaft height 132							1	3	-													
Shaft height 160							1	6														
Overall length (car rated power)	nnot be selected,	detei	rmi	ne	d by	y the	choic	e of														
Induction version											1											
Synchronous versi	ion (only shaft h	eigh	t 1	32	an	d 16	))				2											
Encoder systems	Without encode	r <sup>1)</sup>										Α								2		
for Motors without a	Absolute encode AM2048S/R) <sup>2)</sup>	er En	Da	t 20	048	3 S/R	(encc	der				E								2		
DRIVE-CLiQ inter- face	Incremental end HTL1024S/R) <sup>1) 3</sup>		r H1	FL 1	102	4 S/F	(enc	oder				н								2		
	Incremental enc HTL2048S/R) <sup>1) 4</sup>		r H1	FL 2	204	8 S/F	(enc	oder				J								2		
	Incremental enc tracks (encoder	oder IC20	sir 148	n/co S/R	os 1	V <sub>pp</sub> 2	2048	S/R w	vith C	ar	nd D	м								2		
	Incremental enc D tracks (encode	oder er IN	rsir 512	n/co 2S/	os 1 R) 1	V <sub>pp</sub> 5) 10)	512 S	'R wi	thout	C	and	Т								2		
	Incremental enc D tracks (encode	oder er IN	rsir 256	n/co 55/	os 1 R) 1	V <sub>pp</sub> 2 ) 10)	256 S	'R wi	thout	C	and	С								2		
Encoder systems for	Absolute encode (encoder AM22)			t- s	ing	letur	n + 1	2-bit	mult	itu	rn	F								1		
Motors with DRIVE-CLiQ inter-	Incremental enc (encoder IC22D		r 22	2-bi	it w	vith c	omm	utati	on po	osi	tion	D								1		
faces	Incremental enc tion (encoder IN					ithou	ıt cor	nmu	tatio	n p	osi-	U								1		
	Incremental enc tion (encoder IN					vitho	ut cor	nmu	tatio	٦p	osi-	S								1		
Winding version	Rated speeds (3 480 V)						D r/m D r/m						В	-								
							00 r/r 50 r/r					I	D									
						15	00 r/r 00 r/r	nin, '	1750	r/r	nin,		F									
						20	00 r/r 50 r/r	nin, 2	2300	r/r	nin,		G									
						25	00 r/r 00 r/r	nin, 2					L									
							00 r/r 00 r/r	-			-		м									
						45	00 r/r 00 r/r	nin, !	5000	r/r	nin,		N									

Descriptions		Dat	a po	siti	on	in Art	icle N	0.														
		1	2	3		4 !	6	7	Ţ	- 8	9	)	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
	Star-delta conne 380 V to 480 V)		ו <sup>1)</sup> (	3 AC		1500/ 2000/ 2500/	5000 i	/min,					S									
Cooling	Forced ventilation	on DE	E ->	NDE	. (	(degre	e of p	rotect	tic	on IP	55)			0								
	Forced ventilation	on NI	DE ->	> DE	. (	(degre	e of p	rotect	tic	on IP	55)			1								
	Water cooling				(	(degre	e of p	rotect	tic	on IP	65)			2								
Type of construc-	IM B3 (IM V5, IN	1 V6,	IM E	36,	M	B7, IM	B8)								0							
tion	IM B5 (IM V1, IN	1 V3)	14)												2							
	IM B35 (IM V15,	, IM \	/35)	6)											3							
Shaft extension (DE)	Balancing																					
Plain shaft																	0					
Fitted key 11)	Full-key																1					
Fitted key 11)	Half-key																2					
Plain hollow shaft <sup>1) 10) 18)</sup>																	3					
Bearings	Vibration quali mens/EN 60034		c. to	Sie	<u>-</u> !	Shaft	and fl	ange	а	iccui	acy											
Standard with lo- cation bearing <sup>15)</sup>	R/A				1	R												В				
Standard with lo- cation bearing <sup>15)</sup>	S/A				1	R												С				
Standard with lo- cation bearing <sup>1) 15)</sup>	SR/A				1	R												D				
Standard 15)	R/A					R												G				
Standard <sup>15)</sup>	S/A				I	R												Н				
Increased radial forces <sup>15) 17)</sup>	R/A					R												F				
Performance 7)	SPECIAL/B					SPECI	۱L											L	]			
High Perform- ance 13)	SPECIAL/B					SPECI	۱L											м				
Advanced Life- time <sup>8) 15)</sup>	S/A				1	R												Q				
Power connec- tion	Cable entry				!	Signa	conn	ectio	n	(loc	king	or	nto I	DE)								
Terminal box (top)	Right				DE									Α								
Terminal box (top)	Left				DE										В							
Terminal box (top)	NDE				Left										C							
Terminal box (top) <sup>16)</sup>	DE					Left										_			D			
Power connector (top) <sup>9) 12)</sup>	Right					DE							_						E			
Power connector (top) <sup>9) 12)</sup>	Left				1	DE													F			

Descriptions		Dat	a po	sitio	n in A	Articl	e No	).													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Ζ
Power connector (top) <sup>9) 12)</sup>	NDE				Left													G			
Power connector (top) <sup>9) 12)</sup>	DE				Left	:												н			
Version																					
Without a DRIVE-C	LiQ interface, PT1	000	temp	erat	ure se	ensor	in th	ne sta	ator	win	nding								2		
With a DRIVE-CLiQ	interface																		1		
Special version (o required for optio																					Z

- 1) Only possible if the 8th data position is "1" (induction version)
- 2) Limited to  $n_{max} = 12,000 \text{ r/min}$
- 3) Limited to  $n_{max} = 9000 \text{ r/min}$
- 4) Limited to  $n_{max} = 4600 \text{ r/min}$
- 5) Limited to  $n_{max} = 15,000 \text{ r/min}$
- 6) Only possible for shaft height 100, 132, and 160.
- 7) Only possible if 8th data position is "1" (induction version)
- Shaft height 80: Limited to  $n_{max} = 15,000 \text{ r/min}$ shaft height 100: Limited to  $n_{max} = 12,000 \text{ r/min}$ shaft height 132: Limited to  $n_{max} = 10,000 \text{ r/min}$ shaft height 160: Limited to  $n_{max} = 9000 \text{ r/min}$  not possible if 12th data position
- shaft height 160: Limited to  $n_{max}$  = 9000 r/min, not possible if 12th data position is "2" (IM B5)
- 8) Limited to  $n_{max} = 5000$  r/min, shaft height 132:  $n_{max} = 4500$  r/min, shaft height 160:  $n_{max} = 4000$  r/min
- 9) For a shaft height of 100, a power connector is only possible up to a maximum stall current of Io = 36 A, for a shaft height of 132, a power connector is only possible up to a maximum stall current of Io = 85 A, a power connector is not possible for shaft height 160
- 10) Only possible if 14th data position: L, M
- 11) Not possible if 14th data position: M
- 12) Not possible for motors in a star-delta (wye-delta) circuit if the 10th data position is "S"
- 13) Only possible if 8th data position is "1" (induction version)
  - Shaft height 80: Limited to  $n_{max} = 20,000 \text{ r/min}$ 
    - shaft height 100: Limited to  $n_{max} = 18,000$  r/min
  - shaft height 132: Limited to  $n_{max} = 15,000$  r/min
  - shaft height 160: Limited to  $n_{max}$  = 10,000 r/min, not possible if 12th data position is "2" (IM B5)
- 14) Not possible with shaft height 160 and 14th data position: L, M
- 15) Not possible if 9th data position: T, U
- 16) Not possible with shaft height 160 and 8th data position is "2" or "4" (synchronous version).
- 17) Limited to shaft height 100: n<sub>max</sub> = 7000 r/min, shaft height 132: n<sub>max</sub> = 6500 r/min, shaft height 160: n<sub>max</sub> = 5300 r/min
- 18) Only possible for the 9th data position: A, C, and S

# 3.4.2 Article No. suffixes for SH 80 Premium Performance

Descriptions		Dat	ta po	ositic	on in <i>l</i>	Artic	le No	<b>)</b> .														
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	1	1	2	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
		1	Р	н	8																	
Shaft height 80		·	·			0	8															
Overall length								1														
								3														
								7														
Induction versio										1												
Encoder sys- tems	Incremental enco tracks (encoder N	der s 12569	in/co S/R)	os 1∖	/ <sub>pp</sub> 25	6 S/R	with	out C	an	ıd D	C									2		
for motors without a																						
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface																						
Encoder sys- tems	Incremental enco (encoder IN19DQ		9 bit	: with	nout c	omm	nutati	onp	osi	tion	S									1		
for motors with a																						
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface																						
Winding ver-	Rated speeds											Т										
sion	(3 AC 380 V to											U										
	480 V)											V										
												W										
Cooling	Forced ventila- tion DE -> NDE	(de	gree	of p	rotect	tion I	P 55)	)					0									
	Forced ventila- tion NDE -> DE	(de	gree	of p	rotect	tion I	P 55)						1									
	Water cooling	(de	gree	of p	rotect	tion l	P 65)						2									
Type of con- struction	IM B5 (IM V1, IM	V3)												2								
Shaft exten- sion (DE) 1)	Balancing																					
Plain shaft																	0					
Plain hollow shaft <sup>2)</sup>																	3					
Bearings	Vibration se-	Sha	aft a	nd																		
	verity acc. to	flar	nge a	accu	racy																	
	Siemens/EN 60034-14																					
Premium Per- formance <sup>3)</sup>	SPECIAL/B	SPE	CIAL	-														N				
Terminal box	Cable entry	Sig tior		conn	ec-	(loc	oking	g ont	o [	DE)												
Тор	Right	DE																	Α	1		

3.4 Selection and ordering data

Descriptions		Dat	a po	ositio	n in /	Articl	e No	).													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Ζ
Тор	Left	DE																В			
Тор	NDE	Left																С			
Тор	DE	Left	t															D			
Power connec- tor	Cable entry	Sig tior		conn	9C-	(lo	oking	g on	to	DE)											
Тор	Right	DE																E			
Тор	Left	DE																F			
Тор	NDE	Left	t i															G			
Тор	DE	Left	t i															Н			
Version																					
Without a DRIVE-	CLiQ interface, PT1	000	tem	perat	ure se	ensor	in tł	ne st	ato	r wir	nding	l							2		
With a DRIVE-CLi	Q interface																		1		
Options for SH 8	0 Premium Perfor	man	ce:																		
Prepared for bear	ingless rotary unio	ns																		Y	<b>′6</b> 4
Sealing air conne	ection																			<b>C</b>	)12
Flange for design	IM B5 with 4 x M8	thre	ade	d hole	es															C	)52

1) Shaft end 24 mm x 50 mm (d x l)

2) Only possible in combination with option Y64.

3) For cooling the greased bearing (to lengthen bearing replacement intervals) and to protect against penetrating liquid, Option Q12 (sealing air connection) is recommended for the Premium Performance version.

# 3.4.3 Article No. supplements for SH 132 and 160, synchronous-reluctance

Descriptions		Dat	ta p	ositic	on of	the o	order	No.													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Ζ
		1	Ρ	Н	8																
Shaft height 132						1	3														
Shaft height 160						1	6														
<b>Overall length</b> (carried power)	annot be selected,	dete	rmi	ined b	y the	choid	e of														
Reluctance version	on Efficiency									5	1										
Reluctance version	on Performance									7											
Encoder sys-	Without encoder										Α	1							2	1	
tems	Absolute encode	r En[	Dat	2048	S/R (	enco	ler A	M204	189	5/R)	Е	1							2	1	
for motors with-	Incremental enco	der	HTL	1024	- S/R (	enco	der H	TL10	24	S/R)	н	1							2	1	
out a	Incremental enco	derl	HTL	2048	S/R (	enco	der H	TL20	48	S/R)	J								2	1	
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface	Incremental enco track (encoder IC				V <sub>pp</sub> 2	048 9	5/R w	ith C	an	d D	М								2		
Encoder sys- tems	Absolute encoder coder AM22DQ)	r 22	bit	single	turn -	+ 12	oit m	ultitu	rn	(en-	F								1		
for motors with a	Incremental enco (encoder IC22DQ		22	bit wi	th co	mmu	tatio	n pos	itio	on	D								1		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface																					
Winding version	Rated speeds (3 AC 380 V to 48	30 V)	)		13	00 r/r 50 r/r force	nin, 1	500	r/n	nin (o	only	D									
						00 r/r 00 r/r						F									
						00 r/r 50 r/r						G									
Cooling	Forced ventilation	n, DE	E>	NDE	(de	gree	of pr	otect	ior	ו IP 5	5)		0								
	Forced ventilation	n, N[	DE	->DE	(de	gree	of pr	otect	ior	ו IP 5	5)		1								
	Water cooling				(de	gree	of pr	otect	ior	ו IP 6	5)		2								
Type of con- struction	IM B3 (IM V5, IM	V6, I	IM	B6, IM	B7,	M B8	)							0							
	IM B5 (IM V1, IM	V3)												2							
	IM B35 (IM V15, I	MV	35)											3							
Shaft extension (DE)	Balancing																				
Plain shaft																0	1				
Fitted key	Full-key		1													1	1				
Fitted key	Half-key															2					

3.4 Selection and ordering data

Descriptions		Data	a posit	on	of t	the o	rder	No.													
		1	2 3	4	1	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
Bearings	Vibration severi acc. to Siemens/EN 60034-14	ty	Shaft curac <u>y</u>		fla	inge	ac-														
Standard with lo- cating bearing	R/A		R														В				
Standard with lo- cating bearing	S/A		R														С				
Standard with lo- cating bearing	SR/A		R														D				
Increased radial forces	R/A		R														F				
Power connec- tion	Cable entry		Signa	cor	nne	ectio	n	(loo	okir	ng c	nto I	DE)									
Terminal box (top)	Right		DE															Α			
Terminal box (top)	Left		DE															В			
Terminal box (top)	NDE		Left															С			
Terminal box (top) <sup>1)</sup>	DE		Left															D			
Version																					
With a DRIVE-CLiQ	interface																		1		
Without a DRIVE-C	LiQ interface, PT1	000 t	emper	atur	e se	ensor	in tł	ne sta	ator	' wii	nding								2		
Special version (or	rder codes are requ	uired	for opt	ons	)																Z

1) Not possible for gk874 terminal boxes (1PH816 and 1PH8138-xxG2x)

# 3.4.4 Article No. suffixes for SH 180 to 280

Descriptions		Dat	ta p	positi	on of	the o	order	No.													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
		1	Р	н	8																
Shaft height 180						1	8														
Shaft height 225						2	2														
Shaft height 280 cooling)	(only induction v	ersio	on	and v	/ater	2	8														
<b>Overall length</b> (carried power)	annot be selected,	dete	erm	ined b	y the	choi	ce of														
Induction versior	1									1											
Synchronous ver	sion									2											
Encoder sys-	Without encoder	1)									Α								2	1	
tems	Absolute encode	r En[	Dat	2048	S/R (	enco	der A	M204	189	5/R)	E								2	1	
for motors with- out a	Incremental encc	der l	ΗTI	1024	S/R (	enco	der H	TL10	24	5/R)	н								2		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface	Incremental enco HTL2048S/R) <sup>1) 4)</sup>	oder	ΗT	L 204	8 S/R	(enco	oder				J								2		
	Incremental enco track (encoder IC				V <sub>pp</sub> 2	048 9	5/R w	ith C	an	d D	м								2		
Encoder sys- tems	Absolute encode coder AM22DQ)	r 22	bit	single	turn	+ 12	oit m	ultitu	rn	(en-	F								1		
for motors with	Incremental enco		22	bit w	th co	mmu	tatio	n pos	itio	on	D								1	1	
a	(encoder IC22DQ	))																			
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface																					
Winding version	Rated speeds (3 AC 380 V to 48	30 V)	)			0 r/m 0 r/m						В									
		,	•			0 r/m 00 r/r	-			-		С									
						00 r/r 50 r/r						D									
						00 r/r 00 r/r						F									
						00 r/r 00 (3				nin,		L									
	Rated speeds				40	0 r/m	in, 50	00 r/r	nir	l		н	1								
	(3 AC 690 V)				70	0 r/m	in, 80	00 r/r	nir	1		К									
	for shaft height 2	280			10	00 r/r	nin,	1150	r/r	nin		U									
					15	00 r/r	nin, '	1750	r/r	nin		W									
Cooling	Forced ventilatio	n, DE	E>	>NDE	(de	egree	of pr	otect	ior	ו IP 5	55)		0								
	Forced ventilatio	n, Nl	DE-	->DE	(de	egree	of pr	otect	ior	ו IP 5	55)		1								
	Water cooling				(de	egree	of pr	otect	ior	ו IP 5	55)		2								

Descriptions		Dat	a posi	itior	۱ of	the c	order	No.									1			
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	- 8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
	Open-circuit vent >NDE (for induct only)				(d	egree	of pr	otect	ion IP 2	23)		3								
	Open-circuit vent >DE (induction v											4								
Type of con- struction	Shaft height 1	80	Sh	aft l	hei	ght 2	25		Shaft l	neigh	it 280	)								
	IM B3 (IM B	6, IM	B7, IN	И В8	5, IN	/I V6)		IM	B3 (IM	V6)			0							
		IM	V5					M١	′5 <sup>9)</sup>				1							
	IM B5 with A450 flange		IM B5 flang	e		\$550			85 with V3) <sup>7) 9</sup>		0 flar	ige	2							
	(IM V3) <sup>5)</sup> IM B35 with A45 <sup>1</sup>	0		35 w		A550	)		335 wit	h A6	50 fla	nge	3							
	flange (IM V35)		flang (IM V					(IM	V35)											
	IM V15 with A45 flange	0	IM V <sup>.</sup> flang		vith	A550	)	IM '	V15 wit	th A6	60 fla	nge	5							
Shaft extension (DE)	Balancing																			
Plain shaft															0	1				
Fitted key	Full-key														1	1				
Fitted key	Half-key														2					
Bearings	Vibration severi acc. to	ty	Shaf cura		d fl	ange	ac-													
	Siemens/EN 60034-14																			
Standard	A		N													Α				
Standard	R/A		R													В				
Increased radial forces	A		N													E				
Increased radial forces	R/A		R													F				
Also possible for s	haft heights 180 a	nd 2	25:																	
Standard	S/A		R													C				
Standard <sup>1)</sup>	SR/A		R													D				
Performance <sup>1) 8)</sup>	SR/A		R	_							_	_	_		_	L				
Power connec- tion	Cable entry		Sign	al co	onn	ectio	n	(loo	oking o	onto l	DE)									
Terminal box (top)	Right		DE														Α			
Terminal box (top)	Left		DE														В			
Terminal box (top)	NDE		Right	t													С			
Terminal box (top)	DE		Right	t													D	1		

### 3.4 Selection and ordering data

Descriptions	D	ata p	ositio	n of t	the o	order	· No.													
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Ζ
Version																	-			
Without a DRIVE-C	LiQ interface, PT100	0 ten	perat	ure se	ensoi	r in tl	he st	atoı	r wir	nding								2		
With a DRIVE-CLiQ	interface																	1	1	
Special version (or	der codes are requir	ed for	optio	ns)																Z

1) Only possible if the 8th data position is "1" (induction version)

4) Limited to  $n_{max} = 4600 \text{ r/min}$ 

5) Limited to  $n_{max}$  = 3000 r/min, not possible if 14th data position is "L" (Performance).

6) Limited to  $n_{max} = 2500$  r/min, not possible if 14th data position is "L" (Performance).

7) Limited to  $n_{max} = 2000 \text{ r/min}$ 

8) Only possible with shaft height 180: Limited to  $n_{max} = 7500 \text{ r/min}$ ,

not possible if the 12th data position is "2" (IM B5) and the 11th data position is "3" and "4" (open-circuit ventilation) only possible for shaft height 225: Limited to  $n_{max} = 6000$  r/min,

not possible if the 12th data position is "2" (IM B5) and the 11th data position is "3" and "4" (open-circuit ventilation) 9) Only possible if 14th data position is "A" or "B" (standard bearings)

# 3.4.5 Article No. suffixes for SH 280

Descriptions		Da	ta	posit	tion of	the	order	۰No.													
		1		2 3	8 4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
		1	I	P H	1 8																
Shaft height 280 cuit ventilation)	) (forced ventilat	ion a	nd	l ope	n-cir-	2	8														
<b>Overall length</b> (crated power)	annot be selected	, dete	ern	nined	by the	choi	ce of														
Induction versio	n									1	1										
Encoder sys-	Without encode										A	1							2		
tems	Absolute encode	er EnD	Dat	t 204	3 S/R (e	encoc	er Al	<b>//20</b> 4	89	5/R)	E								2		
for motors	Incremental enc										н								2		
without a	Incremental enc										J								2		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface	Incremental enc track (encoder IC	oder s	sin	n/cos							м								2		
Freedoxeye				•		. 17				(010	-	-							1		
Encoder sys- tems	Absolute encode coder AM22DQ)	er, 22-	-DI	t sing	leturn	+ 12-	olt m	uititt	Irn	(en-	F								1		
for motors with	Incremental enc		22	2-bit,	with c	omm	utatio	on po	sit	ion	D								1		
a DRIVE-CLiQ in-	(encoder IC22D0	2)																			
terface																					
External encod- er systems	Incremental enc ner), prepared fo					POG 2	22 (Ba	aume	er-l	Hüb-	G										
	Incremental enc ner), prepared fo					POG ´	0 (Ba	aume	er-l	Hüb-	к										
Winding ver-	Rated speeds	400	) r/	min,	500 r/ı	min, é	500 r/	min,	70	)0 r/r	nin	В									
sion	(3 AC 380 V to	700	) r/	min, 8	300 r/n	nin, 1	000 r	/min	, 1	100 r	/min	С	1								
	480 V)			r/min ⁄/min	, 1150	r/mir	ı, 13!	50 r/r	niı	٦,		D									
				r/min /min	, 1750	r/mir	n, 200	00 r/r	niı	٦,		F									
	Rated speeds	400	) r/	min,	500 r/ı	min						н	1								
	(690 V 3 AC)	700	) r/	min,	800 r/ı	min						к	1								
					, 1150		<u>ו</u>					U	1								
		150	00	r/min	, 1750	r/mir	ı					w	1								
Cooling	Forced ventila- tion	(deg	gre	e of p	protect	ion IF	55)					1	1								
	Forced ventila- tion	(ope IP 23		circu	it venti	latior	n with	n deg	ree	e of p	rotec	tion	4								
Type of con-	IM B3 (IM V6)		,										1	0	1						
struction	IM V5 <sup>6)</sup>													1	1						
	IM B5 with A660	fland	qe	(IM \	(3) <sup>6)</sup>									2	1						
	IM B35 with A66		<u> </u>	-	-									3	1						
	IM V15 with A66		-		- /									5	1						

### 3.4 Selection and ordering data

Descriptions		Dat	ta po	siti	on of	the o	order	No.													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
Shaft exten- sion (DE)	Balancing																				
Smooth shaft (without key- way)																0					
Fitted key	Full-key															1					
Fitted key	Half-key															2					
Bearings	Vibration se- verity acc. to Siemens/EN 60034-14		aft a nge a		iracy																
Standard	A	N															Α				
Standard	R/A	R															В				
Increased radial forces	A	N															E				
Increased radial forces	R/A	R															F				
Power connec- tion	Cable entry	Sig tio	nal o n	conr	nec-	Ext	terna	l fan	I												
Terminal box	Bottom	DE																U			
NDE right						ND	E top	, air	inle	et fro	om N	DE, a	ir-flo	w dir	ecti	ion N	IDE	>DE			
						ND	E left	, air	inle	et fro	om N	DE, a	ir-flo	w dir	ecti	ion N	IDE	>DE		G	500
Terminal box	Bottom	DE																V			
NDE left						ND	E top	, air	inle	et fro	om N	DE, a	ir-flo	w dir	ecti	ion N	IDE	>DE			
						ND	E rigł	nt, ai	r in	let f	rom	NDE,	air-fl	ow d	irec	tion	NDE	>DE	Ξ	6	502
Terminal box	Right	DE																W			
NDE top						ND	E left	, air	inle	et fro	om N	DE, a	ir-flo	w dir	ecti	ion N	IDE	>DE		6	500
						ND	E rigl	nt, ai	r in	let f	rom	NDE,	air-fl	ow d	irec	tion	NDE	>DE	Ξ	6	502
Terminal box DE	Right	ND	E															Х			
top <sup>4)</sup>						ND	E top	, air	inle	et fro	om N	DE, a	ir-flo	w dir	ecti	ion N	IDE	>DE '	4) 5)		
						ND	E left	, air	inle	et fro	om N	DE, a	ir-flo	w dir	ecti	ion N	IDE	>DE '	4)	6	500
						ND	E rigl	nt, ai	r in	let f	rom	NDE,	air-fl	ow d	irec	tion	NDE	>DE	4)	6	502
Version																					
Without a DRIVE-	CLiQ interface, PT	1000	temp	pera	ture s	enso	r in t	he st	ato	r wi	nding	9							2		
With a DRIVE-CLi																			1		
For other version	s, see options																				Z

1) When ordering, also select option H75

2) When ordering, also select options H56 or G80

4) Only possible if 12th data position is "0" (IM B3) and "1" (IM V5).

5) Only possible for assignments with terminal box 1XB7712-P..

6) Only possible if 14th data position is "A" and "B" (standard bearings); n<sub>max</sub> limited to 2000 r/min

7) Only possible for the following combinations:

12th data position is "0" or "1" if 15th data position is "W" or "X"

12th data position is "2," "3," or "5" if 15th data position "W"

# 3.4.6 Article No. supplement for shaft height 80 to 160 + holding brake DE

Descriptions		Dat	ta p	ositic	on of	the c	order	No.													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Ζ
	· · ·	1	Ρ	Н	8																
Shaft height 80						0	8														
Shaft height 100	0					1	0														
Shaft height 132	2					1	3														
Shaft height 160	0					1	6														
<b>Overall length</b> ( rated power)	cannot be selected	l, det	ern	nined	by th	e cho	ice o	f													
Induction versio	on with holding bra	ake 1	)							3											
Synchronous ver 160) <sup>1)</sup>	rsion with holding	brak	(e	only s	haft	heigł	nts 13	32 an	d	4											
Encoder sys-	without encoder	2)									Α								2		
tems	Absolute encoder	<sup>r</sup> EnD	at	2048 9	5/R (e	encod	er AM	Л204	85	/R)	Ε								2		
for motors without a	Incremental enco HTL1024S/R) <sup>2)</sup>	der H	HTL	1024	S/R (	enco	der				н								2		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface	Incremental enco HTL2048S/R) <sup>2)</sup>	der H	HTL	2048	S/R (	enco	der				J								2		
	Incremental enco track (encoder IC				V <sub>pp</sub> , 2	048 9	5/R w	ith C	an	d D	м								2		
Encoder sys- tems	Absolute encoder coder AM22DQ)	, 22-	bit	single	turn -	+ 12-ł	oit m	ultitu	rn	(en-	F								1		
for motors with	Incremental enco	der,	22-	bit, w	ith co	ommu	Itatic	on po	siti	on	D								1		
a	(encoder IC22DQ	)																			
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface																					
Winding version	1																				
Cooling	Forced ventila- tion DE -> NDE	(de	gre	e of p	rotec	tion l	P 55)	)					0								
	Forced ventila- tion NDE -> DE	(de	gre	e of p	rotec	tion I	P 55)	)					1								
	Water cooling	(de	gre	e of p	rotec	tion <b>I</b>	P 55)	<b>)</b> <sup>4)</sup>					2	1							
Type of con- struction	IM B5 (IM V1, IM V3) <sup>5)</sup>													2							
	IM B35 (IM V15, IM V35) <sup>8)</sup>													3							
Shaft exten- sion (DE)	Balancing														-						
Smooth shaft (without key- way)																0					
Fitted key	Half-key															2	1				
Bearings	Vibration se- verity acc. to	Sha	aft	and																	

3.4 Selection and ordering data

Descriptions		Da	ta p	ositi	on of	the o	ordei	No.													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	Τ-	8	9	10	11	12	<b>-</b>	13	14	15	16	-	z
	Siemens/EN 60034-14	flaı	nge	accu	racy																
Standard	A	N															Α				
Advanced Life- time	A	N															Р				
Power connec- tion <sup>6)</sup>	Cable entry	Sig tio		conr	ec-	(lo	oking	g ont	to I	DE)											
Terminal box (top)	Right	DE																A			
Terminal box (top)	Left	DE																В			
Terminal box (top)	NDE	Lef	t															C			
Terminal box (top) <sup>10)</sup>	DE	Lef	t															D			
Power connec- tor (top) <sup>3) 7)</sup>	Right	DE																E			
Power connec- tor (top) <sup>3) 7)</sup>	Left	DE																F			
Power connec- tor (top) <sup>3) 7)</sup>	NDE	Lef	t															G			
Power connec- tor (top) <sup>3) 7)</sup>	DE	Lef	t															н			
Version																			1		
Without a DRIVE	-CLiQ interface, P	Г1000	ter	npera	ture s	enso	r in t	he st	ato	or wi	nding	9							2		
With a DRIVE-CLi	Q interface																		1		
Brake versions:																					
Brake supply vol	tage	Ho	ldin	ig bra	ke DE															ι	J60
230 V 1 AC, 50/6	50 Hz	Ho	ldin	ig bra	ke DE	with	mici	oswi	tcł	۱										ι	J61
		Но	ldin	ig bra	ke DE	with	mar	ual k	ora	ke re	elease	e leve	r							ι	J62
		Ho	ldin	ig bra	ke DE	with	mic	oswi	tcł	n and	d mar	nual k	orake	relea	ase	leve	r			ι	J63
Brake supply volt	tage	Но	ldin	ig bra	ke DE															ι	J6!
24 V DC		Ho	ldin	g bra	ke DE	with	mici	oswi	tcł	۱										ι	J6(
		Ho	ldin	g bra	ke DE	with	mar	ual k	ora	ke re	elease	e leve	r							ι	J6:
		Ho	ldin	ig bra	ke DE	with	mici	oswi	tcł	n and	d mar	nual k	orake	relea	ase	leve	r			ι	J6

1) A U option must also be stated in the order to specify the holding brake version.

Shaft height 80: limited to  $n_{max} = 5000 \text{ r/min}$ 

Shaft height 100: limited to  $n_{max} = 5000 \text{ r/min}$ 

Shaft height 132: limited to  $n_{max} = 4500 \text{ r/min}$ 

Shaft height 160: limited to  $n_{max} = 4000 \text{ r/min}$ 

2) Only possible if 8th data position is "3" (induction version)

4) With holding brake, degree of protection is limited to IP55.

5) Not possible with shaft height 160.

- 6) A holding brake can only be connected via a terminal box (top).
- 7) Power connector for motor only (not with holding brake):
- Power connector for shaft height 100 only possible up to a maximum stall current of Io = 36 A. Power connector for shaft height 132 only possible up to a maximum stall current of Io = 85 A. Power connector not possible for shaft height 160
- 8) Not possible for shaft height 80
- 9) Only possible if 15th data position: A and B
- 10) Not possible with shaft height 160 and 8th data position is "4" (synchronous version)

# 3.4.7 Article No. supplement for SH 132 and 160, synchronous-reluctance + holding brake

Descriptions		Dat	ta p	ositi	on of	the o	orde	r No.													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
		1	Ρ	Н	8																
Shaft height 132	2					1	3														
Shaft height 160	)					1	6														
<b>Overall length</b> ( rated power)	cannot be selected	, det	erm	ined	by th	ne cho	oice o	of													
Reluctance versi	ion Efficiency with	hol	din	g bra	ke					6											
Reluctance versi	ion Performance v	vith	hol	ding	brak	e				8											
Encoder sys-	Without encoder										Α								2		
tems	Absolute encoder	EnD	at 2	2048	S/R (e	encod	er A	M204	18S	/R)	E								2		
for motors without a	Incremental enco	der H	HTL	1024	↓S/R	(enco	der H	HTL1	)24	S/R)	Н								2		
	Incremental enco	der H	HTL	2048	3 S/R	(enco	der H	HTL2	048	S/R)	J								2		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface	Incremental enco track (encoder IC				V <sub>pp</sub> , 2	2048 9	S/R w	vith C	an	d D	м								2		
Encoder sys- tems	Absolute encoder coder AM22DQ)	, 22-	bit s	ingle	eturn	+ 12-	bit m	ultit	ırn	(en-	F								1		
for motors with a	Incremental enco (encoder IC22DQ		22-	bit, w	ith c	ommi	utati	on po	osit	ion	D								1		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface																					
Winding ver- sion	Rated speeds (3 AC 380 V to					) r/mi for fo						D									
	480 V)			/min, /min	1750	) r/mi	n, 20	000 r	/mi	n,		F									
				/min, /min	2300	) r/mi	n, 26	550 r	/mi	n,		G									
Cooling	Forced ventila- tion DE -> NDE	(de	gre	e of p	oroteo	tion l	P 55	)					0								
	Forced ventila- tion NDE -> DE	(de	gre	e of p	oroteo	ction l	P 55	)					1								
	Water cooling	(de	gre	e of p	oroted	ction l	P 55	5)					2								
Type of con- struction	IM B5 (IM V1, IM V3)	(no	ot po	ssibl	e for	shaft	heig	ht 16	50)					2							
	IM B35 (IM V15, IM V35)													3							
Shaft exten- sion (DE)	Balancing														_						
Smooth shaft (without key- way)																0					
Fitted key	Half-key															2	]				
Bearings	Vibration se- verity acc. to	Sha	aft a	and																	

## 3.4 Selection and ordering data

Descriptions		Da	ta	pos	itio	n of	the o	rder	No	).												
		1		2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
	Siemens/EN 60034-14	fla	ng	je ad	cur	асу																
Standard	А	Ν																Α	]			
Power connec- tion	Cable entry	Sig tio	-	al co	onne	ec-	(loc	oking	g or	nto I	DE)											
Terminal box (top)	Right	DE																	A			
Terminal box (top)	Left	DE																	В			
Terminal box (top)	NDE	Lef	ft																С			
Terminal box (top) <sup>1)</sup>	DE	Lef	ft																D			
Version																						
With a DRIVE-CLi	Q interface																			1		
Without a DRIVE-	CLiQ interface, PT1	000	) te	empe	erat	ure s	ensor	r in tl	ne s	tato	or wi	nding	]							2		
Special version (	order codes are req	uire	d f	or o	otio	ns)																Z

1) Not possible for gk874 terminal boxes (1PH816 and 1PH8138-xxG2x )

# 3.4.8 Article No. supplements for SH 180 to 225 + holding brake

Descriptions		Dat	ta	posit	ion o	fthe	orde	r No.													
		1	2	2 3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
		1	P	۲ (	I 8																
Shaft height 180	)		•			1	8	1													
Shaft height 225	5					2	2														
Overall length								•													
Induction versio	n with holding bra	ake 1	1)							3											
Synchronous ve	rsion with holding	j bra	ke	1)						4											
Encoder sys-	without encoder <sup>2</sup>	2)									Α								2		
tems	Absolute encoder	EnD	Dat	2048	3 S/R (	encoc	ler A	M204	185	/R)	E								2		
for motors without a	Incremental enco HTL1024S/R) <sup>2)</sup>	der l	ΗTI	L 102	24 S/R	(enco	der				н								2		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface	Incremental enco HTL2048S/R) <sup>2)</sup>	der l	ΗTI	L 204	8 S/R	(enco	der				J								2		
	Incremental enco track (encoder ICZ				V <sub>pp</sub> ,	2048	S/R w	vith C	ar	d D	м								2		
Encoder sys- tems	Absolute encoder coder AM22DQ)	, 22-	bit	sing	eturn	+ 12-	bit m	ultitı	ırn	(en-	F								1		
for motors with a	Incremental enco (encoder IC22DQ		22	-bit,	with o	omm	utatio	on po	osit	ion	D								1		
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface																					
Winding version	l																				
Cooling	Forced ventila- tion, DE>NDE	(de	egre	ee of	prote	ction	IP 55	)					0								
	Forced ventila- tion, NDE>DE	(de	egre	ee of	prote	ction	IP 55	)					1								
	Water cooling	(de	egre	ee of	prote	ction	IP 55	)					2								
	Open-circuit ventilation, NDE>DE (in- duction version only)	(de	egre	ee of	prote	ction	IP 23	)					4								
Type of con- struction	IM B3 (IM B6, IM B7, IM B8)													0							
Shaft exten- sion (DE)	Balancing																				
Fitted key	Half-key															2					
Bearings	Vibration se- verity acc. to			and e acc	uracy	,															
	Siemens/EN 60034-14		.9.																		
Standard	A	N															Α	1			
Power connec- tion <sup>3)</sup>	Cable entry	Sig tio		l cor	nec-	(lo	okin	g on	to l	DE)								1			

### 3.4 Selection and ordering data

Descriptions		Dat	а ро	sitio	n of t	the o	rder	No.													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
Terminal box (top)	Right	DE																A			
Terminal box (top)	Left	DE																В			
Terminal box (top)	NDE	Rigł	nt															С			
Terminal box (top)	DE	Rigł	nt															D			
Version																					
Without a DRIVE-	CLiQ interface, PT1	000	temp	oerati	ure se	ensor	in tł	ne sta	ato	r wir	nding								2		
With a DRIVE-CLi	Q interface																		1		
Brake versions:																					
Brake supply voltage Holding brake DE with microswitch and manual brake release lever													ι	J63							
230 V 1 AC, 50/6	230 V 1 AC, 50/60 Hz																				
Z options that ca	Z options that cannot be combined with holding brake DE: K18, K90, L03, V92, M39																				

1) A U option must also be stated in the order to specify the holding brake version.

Shaft height 180: limited to  $n_{max} = 3500 \text{ r/min}$ 

Shaft height 225: limited to  $n_{max} = 3100 \text{ r/min}$ 

2) Only possible if 8th data position is "3" (induction version)

3) A holding brake can only be connected via a brake terminal box (top).

## 3.4.9 Options

Order	Option description	Fo	r use with moto	ors
code		"✓" = Option p	ossible,	
		"" = Option n	ot possible	
	When ordering a motor with options, add a -Z to the order number.	Shaft height 80 to 160	Shaft height 180 to 280	Shaft height 280
	Specify the order code for every option required. For order codes, avoid repeating the order codes in text form in the or- der.			For forced ventilation only (11th data position is "1" or "4")
A12	Additional PTC thermistor circuit for alarm and trip (only possible for version with terminal box)	1	~	✓
A25	Additional temperature sensor as reserve connected to signal ter- minal strip (only possible for version with terminal box)	1	Standard	Standard
A72	2 PT100 resistance thermometers for bearing temperature moni- toring (DE and NDE)		1	✓
B02	Factory test certificate in accordance with EN 10204 2.3 (for motor ordered)	1	Standard	Standard

Order code	Option description	Fo "√" = Option p "" = Option n		ors
	When ordering a motor with options, add a -Z to the order number. Specify the order code for every option required. For order codes, avoid repeating the order codes in text form in the or- der.	Shaft height 80 to 160	Shaft height 180 to 280	Shaft height 280 For forced ventilation only (11th data position is "1" or "4")
B35	Factory test certificate for vibration log	1	✓ <sup>5)</sup>	✓ <sup>5)</sup>
B36	Factory test certificate for run-out log	1	Only for SH 180 and SH 225	
G00	External fan NDE left, air inlet at NDE (possible if 15th data position is U, W, or X)			1
G02	External fan NDE right, air inlet at NDE (possible if 15th data position is V, W, or X)			1
G06	External fan DE left, air inlet NDE (possible if 11th position =1 and 15th position = U, V, or W; pos- sible if 11th position =4 and 15th position = W)			-
G07	External fan DE left, air inlet DE (possible if 11th position =1 and 15th position = U, V, or W; pos- sible if 11th position =4 and 15th position = W)			1
G08	External fan DE right, air inlet NDE (possible if 11th position =1 and 15th position = U, V, or W; pos- sible if 11th position =4 and 15th position = W)			1
G09	External fan DE right, air inlet DE (possible if 11th position =1 and 15th position = U, V, or W; pos- sible if 11th position =4 and 15th position = W)			1
G11	External fan DE top, air inlet DE (possible if 11th position =1 and 15th position = U, V, or W; pos- sible if 11th position =4 and 15th position = W)			1
G14	With external fan (only possible if 11th data position is "1" or "4")	Only for SH 132 and SH 160	1	1
G50	Nipple for SPM, with M8 adapter		1	1
G80	Mounting of a POG 10 incremental encoder supplied by customer (possible if 9th data position is "K")			1
H56	Mounting an incremental encoder POG 10 D 1024 (encoder HTL1024S/R) (possible if the 9th data position is "K")			1
H75	Mounting of a hollow shaft encoder HOG 22 supplied by the customer (possible if the 9th data position is "G")			1
K08	Encoder connection or DRIVE-CLiQ mounted on the opposite side (not possible if 15th data position is "X")		1	1

Order code	Option description	Fo "√" = Option p "" = Option n		ors
	When ordering a motor with options, add a -Z to the order number. Specify the order code for every option required. For order codes, avoid repeating the order codes in text form in the or- der.	Shaft height 80 to 160	Shaft height 180 to 280	Shaft height 280 For forced ventilation only (11th data position is "1" or "4")
K09	Terminal box or power connector NDE right	Only for SH 100 <sup>1)</sup> to SH 160		
	Terminal box NDE right, cable entry DE, signal connection top (possible if the 15th data position is "A")		1	
K10	Terminal box or power connector NDE left	Only for SH 100 <sup>1)</sup> to SH 160		
	Terminal box NDE left, cable entry DE, signal connection top (pos- sible if the 15th data position is "A")		1	
K16	Second shaft extension (d x l: 95 mm x 170 mm) (possible if the 9th data position is "A" or "G" and 12th data position is "0" or "3")			•
K17	Labyrinth seal DE for Performance version (14th data position "L")		Only for SH 180	
K18	Radial shaft sealing ring DE <sup>2)</sup>	1	1	
K40	Regreasing system, DE and NDE		Only for SH 180 and SH 225	Standard
K45	AC 230 V anti-condensation heating		1	1
К69	Prepared for pipe connection NDE right (only possible for forced ventilation, not for G00 to G11)			✓
К70	Prepared for pipe connection NDE left (only possible for forced ventilation, not for G00 to G11)			•
K71	Prepared for pipe connection NDE top (only possible for forced ventilation, not for G00 to G11)			✓
K80	Axial pipe connection NDE (only possible with forced ventilation)		Only for SH 180 and SH 225	Options K69, K70, K71
K83	Rotation of the terminal box through +90 degrees (possible in combination with option K09 or K10 or if the 15th data position is "U", "V" or "W")		✓ 4)	•
K84	Rotation of the terminal box through -90 degrees (possible in combination with option K09 or K10 or if the 15th data position is "U", "V", "W" or "X")		✓ 4)	•
K85	Rotation of the terminal box through +180 degrees (possible in combination with option K09 or K10 or if the 15th data position is "U", "V", "W" or "X")		1	1

Order code	Option description	"√" = Option p "" = Option n	ot possible	
	When ordering a motor with options, add a -Z to the order number. Specify the order code for every option required. For order codes, avoid repeating the order codes in text form in the or- der.	Shaft height 80 to 160	Shaft height 180 to 280	Shaft height 280 For forced ventilation only (11th data position is "1" or "4")
K90	Version with flange size A400 (possible if 12th data position is "2", "3" or "5")		Only for SH 180	
L00	Replace terminal box (standard) with the next largest terminal box (note dimension implications in the SPC)		1	✓
L03	Increased resistance to vibration		Only for SH 180 and SH 225	
L12	Condensation drain hole		Standard for water cooling	Only if the 11th data po- sition is "1"
L27	NDE bearing in insulated version		Only for SH 180	Standard
L29	Enhanced corrosion protection for installation in industrial/marine climates			✓
L72	Shaft made of special steel (note: option results in longer delivery times)			✓
L74	Fan version in IP65 degree of protection <sup>3)</sup>	1		
L76	EC fan 3 AC 400 V 50/60 Hz		Only for SH 180 and SH 225	
M03	Version for potentially explosive atmospheres Zone 2	Only for SH 100 to SH 160		
M39	Version for potentially explosive atmospheres Zone 22	Only for SH 100 to SH 160	Only for SH 180 and SH 225	
M83	Additional back-off thread on motor feet (only possible if 12th data position is "0" or "3")			✓
P00	Undrilled cable entry plate		1	Not for 1XB7820-P00
P01	Cable entry plate 3 x M63 x 1.5		Only for 1XB7700-P02 1XB7712-P03	Only for 1XB7712-P03
P02	Cable entry plate 3 x M75 x 1.5		Only for 1XB7712-P03	Only for 1XB7712-P01 1XB7712-P03
P03	Cable entry plate 4 x M75 x 1.5			Only for 1XB7712-P01

Order code	Option description	"√" = Option po	For use with motors			
	When ordering a motor with options, add a -Z to the order number. Specify the order code for every option required. For order codes, avoid repeating the order codes in text form in the or- der.	Shaft height 80 to 160	Shaft height 180 to 280	Shaft height 280 For forced ventilation only (11th data position is "1" or "4")		
P04	Cable entry plate 4 x M63 x 1.5		Only for 1XB7712-P03	Only for 1XB7712-P01 1XB7712-P03		
Q00	Increase number of grounding terminals in the terminal box			1		
Q12	Sealing air connection	1				
Q21	Screw locked with Loctite		1	↓		
Q25	Q25 fan connection NDE or at the top with M16x1.5	Only for SH 100 to SH 160				
Q31	Metal nameplate instead of adhesive label	1	1	1		
Q52	Flange for design IM B5 with $4 \times M8$ threaded holes (only possible when 14th data position is "N")	Only for SH 80				
Q81	Increased bearing preloading (only possible if the 14th data position "B", "C" and "D")					
U60	230 V holding brake	1				
U61	230 V holding brake with micro-switch	1				
U62	230 V holding brake with manual brake release lever	1				
U63	230 V holding brake with micro-switch and manual brake release lever	1	Only for SH 180 and SH 225			
U65	24 V DC holding brake	1				
U66	24 V DC holding brake with microswitch	1				
U67	24 V DC holding brake with manual brake release lever	1				
U68	24 V DC holding brake with micro-switch and manual brake re- lease lever	1				
V90	1PH7-compatible shaft extension (d x l: 42 mm x 110 mm) (reduced radial forces must be observed; only possible if the 8th data position is "1" or "3")	Only for SH 132				
V91	1FT6-compatible shaft extension (d x l: 48 mm x 82 mm) (only possible for 8th data position is "2")	Only for SH 132				
V92	1PH7184-/1PL6184-compatible shaft extension (d x l: 60 mm x 140 mm) (possible if the 8th data position is "1")		Only for 1PH8184			
Y64	Hollow shaft prepared for bearingless rotary unions with flange diameter 114H6	1				
Y82	Extra nameplate with customer specifications (plain text required)		1	1		
Y84	Customer specifications on nameplate (max. 30 characters)	1	1	1		
	Paint finish anthracite RAL 7016	Standard	Standard	Standard		

Order code	Option description	For use with motors "✓" = Option possible, "" = Option not possible		
	When ordering a motor with options, add a -Z to the order number. Specify the order code for every option required. For order codes, avoid repeating the order codes in text form in the or- der.	Shaft height 80 to 160	Shaft height 180 to 280	Shaft height 280 For forced ventilation only (11th data position is "1" or "4")
X01	Paint finish in RAL 9005 (jet black)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X02	Paint finish in RAL 9001 (cream white)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X03	Paint finish in RAL 6011 (reseda green)	1	1	1
X04	Paint finish in RAL 7032 (pebble gray)	1	✓	✓
X05	Paint finish in RAL 5015 (sky blue)	1	✓	✓
X06	Paint finish in RAL 1015 (light ivory)	1	✓	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X08	Paint finish in RAL 9006 (white aluminum)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X11	Paint finish in RAL 6019 (pastel green)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X12	Paint finish in RAL 5010 (gentian blue)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X13	Paint finish in RAL 5024 (pastel blue)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X14	Paint finish in RAL 5017 (traffic blue)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X15	Paint finish in RAL 9010 (pure white)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X16	Paint finish in RAL 6018 (yellow green)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X17	Paint finish in RAL 5014 (pigeon blue)	1	1	1
X18	Paint finish in RAL 9018 (papyrus white)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X19	Paint finish in RAL 2004 (pure orange)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X20	Paint finish in HWS (gray)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X21	Paint finish in RAL 9003 (signal white)	1	1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>
X22	Paint finish in RAL 9002 (gray white)	1	1	1
X23	Paint finish in RAL 5005 (signal blue)	1	1	1
X24	Paint finish in RAL 7001 (sliver gray)	1	1	1
X25	Paint finish in RAL 1000 (green beige)	1	1	1
X26	Paint finish in RAL 6017 (May green)	1	1	1
X27	Paint finish in RAL 9023 (pearl dark gray)	1	1	1
X28	Paint finish in RAL 5009 (azure blue)	1	1	1
X29	Paint finish in RAL 7005 (mouse gray)	1	1	1
X30	Paint finish in RAL 1014 (ivory)	1	1	1
X31	Paint finish in RAL 5007 (brilliant blue)	1	1	1
X44	Paint finish in RAL 1023 (traffic yellow)	1	1	1
X50	Paint finish in RAL 3004 (purple red)	1	1	1
X51	Paint finish in RAL 2003 (pastel orange)	1	1	1
X52	Paint finish in RAL 3000 (flame red)	1	1	1
X53	Paint finish in RAL 7035 (light gray)	1	1	1
X54	Paint finish in RAL 7004 (signal gray)	1	1	✓

### 3.4 Selection and ordering data

Order	Option description	Fo	or use with moto	ors
code		"√" = Option possible,		
		"" = Option n	ot possible	
	When ordering a motor with options, add a -Z to the order number.	Shaft height 80 to 160	Shaft height 180 to 280	Shaft height 280
	Specify the order code for every option required. For order codes, avoid repeating the order codes in text form in the or- der.			For forced ventilation only (11th data position is "1" or "4")
X55	Paint finish in RAL 7038 (agate gray)	1	1	1
X56	Paint finish in RAL 1013 (oyster white)	1	1	1
X57	Paint finish in RAL 5012 (light blue)	1	1	1
X58	Paint finish in RAL 2001 (red orange)	1	1	1
X59	Paint finish in RAL 7030 (stone gray)	1	1	1
X91	Paint finish in RAL 7011 (iron gray)	1	1	1
K24	Primer	Pale green	Red brown	Red brown
K23	Special paint finish "Worldwide" (anthracite RAL 7016)	1	1	1
K23 + X	Special finish "Worldwide" in another color (X01 to X91)	1	1	1

1) Not possible if 12th data position is "2" (type of construction IM B5)

2) Only recommended if oil spray/mist occasionally gets onto the sealing ring. Radial shaft sealing ring not possible if: 14th data position is "E", "F" and "L", "M"

3) Regardless of the degree of protection, for high pollution levels of the ambient air, the fan must be cleaned.

4) Not possible for 1PH822 and terminal box 1XB7712-P03

5) Not possible if the 14th data position is "E" and "F"

# 3.5 Rating plate data

SIEMENS									
3 ~ M	ot. (1F	<b>')</b>	L010		NO. YF	-	L020	L012	
		L315	*)						BARCODE 2D
IM	L030	IP L040		TH.CL.	L042				
L	J <sub>N</sub> (V)	I <sub>N</sub> (A)	P <sub>N</sub> (kW)	L049	f <sub>N</sub> (Hz)	n <sub>N</sub> (1/min)	L048		
L050	L051	L060	L070	L080	L090	L100	L110		
L120	L121	L130	L140	L150	L160	L170	L180		
L190	L191	L200	L210	L220	L230	L240	L250		EN 60034
L257	L258	L260	L261	L263	L265	L266	L267		rnr
	I <sub>max</sub> (A)	L270	M <sub>max</sub>	(Nm)	L275	n <sub>max</sub> (1/n	nin)	L280	EHC
		L285				L29	90		UL L025
	L295		L296	3		L297		L298	OL
L325 <sup>')</sup>					L32	20*)			
m:	L335 kg					L3	30 <sup>*)</sup>		L045
Sieme	Siemens AG, Industriestr. 1, DE-97616 Bad Neustadt Made in Germany								

The nameplate (rating plate) shows the technical specifications for the supplied motor.

\*) Some fields may also be empty (options, customer data)

Figure 3-3 Nameplate layout for 1PH808 to 1PH816

#### Table 3-5Elements on the rating plate

No.	Description	No.	Description
L010	Article No.	L210	Rated power $P_N$ (3)
L012	Consecutive number	L220	cos φ (3)
L020	Factory serial number	L230	Rated frequency $f_N$ (3)
L025	UL mark	L240	Rated speed $n_N$ (3)
L030	Type of construction	L250	Operating mode (3)
L040	Degree of protection	L257	Rated voltage $U_N$ (4)
L042	Temperature class	L258	Connection method (4)
L045	Balancing code	L260	Rated current I <sub>N</sub> (4)
L048	Operating mode	L261	Rated power $P_N$ (4)
L049	for synchronous motors: induced voltage at rated speed $V_{\mbox{\scriptsize IN}}$	L263	cos φ (4)
	for induction motors: $\cos \phi$	L265	Rated frequency $f_N$ (4)
L050	Rated voltage $U_N$ (1)	L266	Rated speed $n_N$ (4)
L051	Connection method (1)	L267	Operating mode (4)
L060	Rated current I <sub>N</sub> (1)	L270	Maximum current I <sub>max</sub>

3.5 Rating plate data

No.	Description	No.	Description
L070	Rated power $P_{N}$ (1)	L275	Maximum torque M <sub>max</sub>
L080	cos φ (1)	L280	Maximum speed n <sub>max</sub>
L090	Rated frequency $f_N$ (1)	L285	Temperature sensor
L100	Rated speed $n_N$ (1)	L290	Encoder
L110	Operating mode (1)	L295	Cooling method
L120	Rated voltage $U_N$ (2)	L296	Throughput I/min (m³/s)
L121	Connection method (2)	L297	System pressure
L130	Rated current $I_N$ (2)	L298	Maximum coolant temperature
L140	Rated power $P_N$ (2)	L315	Options (I)
L150	cos φ (2)	L320	Options (II)
L160	Rated frequency $f_N$ (2)	L325	Optional customer information
L170	Rated speed $n_N$ (2)	L330	Anti-condensation heating
L180	Operating mode (2)	L335	Weight
L190	Rated voltage $U_N$ (3)		
L191	Connection method (3)		
L200	Rated current $I_N$ (3)		

The rating plate (type plate) shows the technical specifications for the supplied motor.

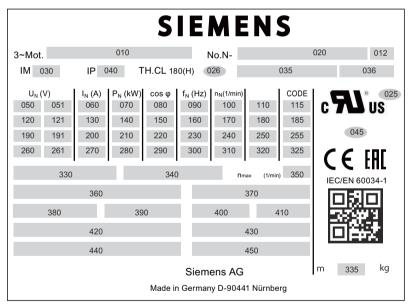


Figure 3-4 Nameplate layout for 1PH818 to 1PH828

Table 3-6	Elements on the rating plate
-----------	------------------------------

No.	Description	No.	Description
010	Article No.	200	Rated current $I_N$ (3)
012	Consecutive number, part of serial number	210	Rated power $P_N(3)$
020	Serial number	220	cos φ (3)

3.5 Rating plate data

No.	Description	No.	Description
025	UL mark	230	Rated frequency $f_N$ (3)
026	(blank)	240	Rated speed n <sub>N</sub> (3)
030	Type of construction	250	Operating mode (3)
035	(blank)	255	Code for operating point 3
036	(blank)	260	Rated voltage $U_N$ (4)
040	Degree of protection	261	Switching mode 4
045	Type of balancing	270	Rated current I <sub>N</sub> (4)
050	Rated voltage $U_N(1)$	280	Rated power $P_N$ (4)
051	Switching mode 1	290	cos φ (4)
060	Rated current $I_N$ (1)	300	Rated frequency $f_N$ (4)
070	Rated power $P_N$ (1)	310	Rated speed $n_N$ (4)
080	cos φ (1)	320	Operating mode (4)
090	Rated frequency $f_N$ (1)	325	Code for operating point 4
100	Rated speed $n_N(1)$	330	Maximum current I <sub>MAX</sub>
110	Operating mode (1)	335	Weight
115	Code for operating point 1	340	Maximum torque M <sub>MAX</sub>
120	Rated voltage $U_N$ (2)	350	Maximum speed n <sub>MAX</sub>
121	Switching mode 2	360	Temperature sensor
130	Rated current $I_N$ (2)	370	Tachometer/resolver
140	Rated power $P_N$ (2)	380	Cooling method
150	cos φ (2)	390	Throughput I/min (m³/s)
160	Rated frequency $f_N(2)$	400	System pressure
170	Rated speed $n_N$ (2)	410	Maximum coolant temperature
180	Operating mode (2)	420	Options (I)
185	Code for operating point 2	430	Options (II)
190	Rated voltage $U_N$ (3)	440	Optional customer information
191	Switching mode 3	450	Anti-condensation heating / dummy

3.5 Rating plate data

# **Mechanical properties**

# 4.1 Cooling

### 4.1.1 General

The following table shows an overview of the available variants of cooling system.

Shaft height	Motor type	Forced ventilation	Water cooling
80	Induction	↓	Ų
100	Induction	₩	Ų
132	Induction, synchronous-reluc- tance and synchronous	Ų	Ų
160	Induction, synchronous-reluc- tance and synchronous	Ų	Ų
180	Induction and synchronous	↓	Ų
225	Induction and synchronous	Ų	Ų
280	Induction	Ų	Ų

Table 4-1Cooling system variants of 1PH8 motors

### 4.1.2 Forced ventilation

When mounting the forced ventilated motor, make sure the motor is well ventilated. Good ventilation is especially important for encapsulated installation. Avoid warm exhaust air being drawn in again. The cooling air must flow in and out without restriction. Avoid accumulated dirt in the cooling ducts as this can reduce the cooling air flow.

All catalog data refer to an ambient temperature of 40  $^\circ$ C and an installation altitude up to 1000 m above sea level.

### NOTICE

#### Thermal damage to temperature-sensitive parts

The motors can have surface temperatures of over +100 °C. Temperature-sensitive parts in contact with the motor or attached to the motor can be damaged. Temperature-sensitive parts include cables and electronic components, for example.

- Never attach temperature-sensitive parts to the motor.
- Ensure that no temperature-sensitive parts are in contact with the motor.

#### 4.1 Cooling

### Ambient/coolant temperature

Operation:  $T = -15 \degree C$  to  $+40 \degree C$  (without any restrictions)

Under conditions other than those specified above (ambient temperature > 40 °C or installation altitude > 1000 m above sea level), you must determine the permissible torque/power reduction from the following table. Ambient temperatures and installation altitudes are rounded off to 5 °C or 500 m respectively.

Installation altitude	Ambient temperature in ° C						
above sea level	40	45	50	55 <sup>1)</sup>			
1000	1.00	0.96	0.92	0.87			
1500	0.97	0.93	0.89	0.84			
2000	0.94	0.90	0.86	0.82			
2500	0.90	0.86	0.83	0.78			
3000	0.86	0.82	0.79	0.75			
3500	0.82	0.79	0.75	0.71			
4000	0.77	0.74	0.71	0.67			

 Table 4-2
 Factors for reducing the torque/power acc. to EN 60034-6

1) Only permitted for the "NDE"  $\Rightarrow$  "DE" direction of air flow

#### Note

#### **Higher ambient temperatures**

For ambient temperatures > 55 °C, contact your local sales partner.

The standard motors are not suitable for use in corrosive atmospheres, atmospheres with a high salt content, or in outdoor applications.

### Mounting a fan and minimum clearance to parts and components mounted by the customer

Shaft height	Fan mounting		
mm			
80 to 225	NDE axial, can be rotated through 180°		
280	NDE radial, different mounting types can be ordered		

Shaft height	Minimum clearance S			
mm	mm			
80	30	1		
100	30	s s		
132	60			
160	80			
180/225	100			
280	120			

Table 4-4Minimum distance S between the air intake/outlet openings and other adjacent<br/>components

### Ventilation data and sound pressure levels

Shaft height mm	Air flow direc- tion	Degree of protec- tion	Airflow rate, min. m <sup>3</sup> /s	Air discharge	Sound pressure level L <sub>pA</sub> (1 m) Motor + operation with an exter- nal fan 50 Hz rated load, toler- ance +3 dB dB	Pressure drop (Δp) Pa
80	NDE $\rightarrow$ DE	IP55	0.02	Axial	701)	95
	$DE \rightarrow NDE$					
100	NDE $\rightarrow$ DE	IP55	0.04			110
	$DE \rightarrow NDE$					
132	NDE $\rightarrow$ DE	IP55	0.09			140
	$DE \rightarrow NDE$					
160	NDE $\rightarrow$ DE	IP55	0.16		73 <sup>1)</sup>	200
	$DE \rightarrow NDE$					
180	NDE $\rightarrow$ DE	IP23	0.21	1	73 <sup>2)</sup>	450
	$DE \rightarrow NDE$	IP55	0.17			550
225	NDE $\rightarrow$ DE	IP23	0.33			600
	$DE \rightarrow NDE$	IP55	0.31			650
280	NDE $\rightarrow$ DE	IP23	0.52	Radial	74 <sup>2)</sup>	600
	$DE \rightarrow NDE$	IP55	0.42			600

Table 4-5Ventilation data and sound pressure levels

#### 4.1 Cooling

- 1) At a rated pulse frequency of 4 kHz and a speed range up to 5000 r/min
- 2) At a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz and speed range
  - Forced ventilation (IP55)
    - Shaft height 180 to 5000 r/min
    - Shaft height 225 to 3500 r/min
    - Shaft height 280 to 3300 r/min
  - Open-circuit ventilation (IP23)
    - Shaft height 180 to 3000 r/min
    - Shaft height 225 to 2000 r/min
    - Shaft height 280 to 2800 r/min

### Note

#### Ambient air

If the ambient air is polluted by particles of dust or similar substances, the preferred air flow direction is NDE  $\rightarrow$  DE.

From shaft height 132 and higher, the motors with air flow direction NDE  $\rightarrow$  DE are optionally available with an air filter (option G14).

### Cleaning the cooling air ducts

On air-cooled motors, you must regularly clean the cooling air ducts through which the ambient air flows. The degree of pollution depends on the location of use. Clean the air cooling ducts, for example, with dry, oil-free compressed air.

### Motors with pipe connection

1PH8 motors with "Forced ventilation" and shaft heights 180...280 can optionally be ordered with "pipe connection." The external fan, which is normally mounted as standard, is omitted in this version. A molded pipe connection replaces the external fan.

The diameter of the pipe connection is based on the standard DIN EN 1506 or DIN EN 13180. This means that commercially available pipes and molded parts for air-conditioning systems can be used.

#### Note

#### Minimum air flow and pressure drop

Pipes and external fans of suitable type and dimensioning must be installed and connected. The required minimum air flow and the pressure drop at the motor must be taken into account for the design and dimensioning.

Shaft height	Diameter	Degree of protection	Minimum air quantity	Pressure drop
mm	mm		m³/s	Ра
180	300	IP23	0.21	450
		IP55	0.17	550
225	350	IP23	0.33	600
		IP55	0.31	650
280	Adapter required	IP23	0.52	600
		IP55	0.42	600

 Table 4-6
 Diameter, minimum air flow and pressure drop

## 4.1.3 Water cooling

## WARNING

## Defective work on the cooling circuit

Defective work on the cooling circuit can cause injury and/or damage to property.

- Only qualified personnel may assemble, install, and commission the cooling circuit.
- Perform installation or service work on the cooling circuit only when the system is deenergized.

The electrochemical processes that take place in a cooling system must be minimized by choosing the right materials. For this reason, mixed installations, i.e. a combination of different materials, such as copper, brass, iron, or halogenated plastic (PVC hoses and seals), should not be used or should be limited to the absolutely essential minimum.

There are 3 types of cooling circuits:

- Closed cooling circuit
- Semi-open cooling circuit
- Open cooling circuit

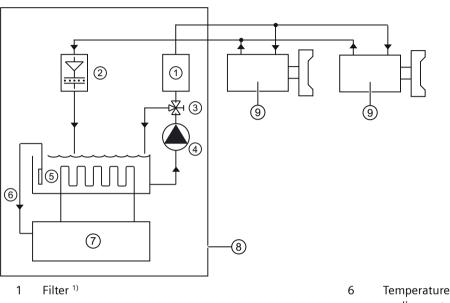
Definition	Description
Closed cooling circuit	The pressure equalizing vessel is closed (oxygen cannot enter the system) and has a pressure relief valve. The coolant is only routed in the motors and converters as well as the components required to dissipate heat.
Semi-open cooling circuit	Oxygen can only enter the cooling system through the pressure equalization vessel, otherwise the same as "closed cooling circuit."
Open cooling circuit (tow- er system)	The coolant is cooled in a tower. In this case, there is intensive oxygen con- tact.

Table 4-7Description of the various cooling circuits

#### Note

#### **Cooling circuits**

Only closed and semi-open cooling circuits are permissible for motors. Converter systems must be connected before the motors in the cooling circuit.



- 2 Flow meter <sup>1)</sup>
- 3 Pressure relief valve, setting valve flow rate <sup>1)</sup>
- 4 Pump
- 5 Cooling water tank

<sup>1)</sup> These components are not absolutely necessary.

Figure 4-1 Example of a semi-open cooling circuit

- 6 Temperature measurement cooling water
- 7 Compressor / cooling unit
- 8 Cooling unit
- 9 Motor

### **Equipotential bonding**

Provide all components in the cooling system (motor, heat exchanger, piping system, pump, pressure equalization tank, etc.) with equipotential bonding. Implement the equipotential bonding using a copper rail or finely stranded copper cable with the appropriate conductor cross-sections.

#### Note

#### Installation of the cooling water pipes

Electrically conductive cooling water pipes must not come into contact with live components.

- Ensure adequate insulation.
- Securely fasten the pipe.

## Materials used in the motor cooling circuit

The materials used in the cooling circuit must be coordinated with the materials in the motor.

Shaft height	Bearing shield	Pipes in the stator (designa- tion)
80	Cast iron (EN-GJL-200)	Stainless steel
100	Cast iron (EN-GJL-200)	Stainless steel
132	Cast iron (EN-GJL-200)	Stainless steel
160	Cast iron (EN-GJL-200)	Stainless steel
180	-	Stainless steel (V4A)
225	-	Stainless steel (V4A)
280	-	Stainless steel (V4A)

 Table 4-8
 Materials used in the cooling circuit of the 1PH8 motor

## Materials and components in the cooling circuit

The following table lists a wide variety of materials and components which may or may not be used in a cooling circuit.

Material	Used as	Description	
Zinc	Pipes, valves and fittings	Use is not permitted.	
Brass	Pipes, valves and fittings	Can be used in closed circuits with inhibitor.	
Copper	Pipes, valves and fittings	Can be used only in closed circuits with inhibitors in which the heat sink and copper component are separated (e.g. connection hose on devices).	
Common steel (e.g. St37) Pipes		Permissible in closed circuits and semi-open circuits with inhibitors or Antifrogen N, check for oxide formation, inspection window recommended.	
Cast steel, cast iron	Pipes, motors	Closed circuit and use of strainers and flushback filters. Fe separator for stainless heat sink.	
High-alloy steel, Group 1 (V2A) Pipes, valves and fittings		Can be used for drinking or municipal water with a chloride content up to <250 ppm, suitable according to definition in Section "Cool- ant definition".	
High-alloy steel, Group 2 (V4A) Pipes, valves and fittings		Can be used for drinking or municipal water with a chloride content up to <500 ppm, suitable according to definition in Section "Cool- ant definition".	
ABS ( <b>A</b> crylnitrile <b>B</b> utadiene <b>S</b> tyrene)	Pipes, valves and fittings	Suitable according to the definition in Section "Coolant definition". Suitable for mixing with inhibitor and/or biocide as well as Antifro- gen N.	
Installation comprising different ma- terials (mixed installation)	Pipes, valves and fittings	Use is not permitted.	

Table 4-9Materials and components of a cooling circuit

Material	Used as	Description
PVC	Pipes, valves, fit- tings and hoses	Use is not permitted.
Hoses		Reduce the use of hoses to a minimum (device connection). Must not be used as the main pipe for the whole system. Recommenda- tion: EPDM hoses with an electrical resistance > $10^9 \Omega$ (e.g. Sem- perflex FKD supplied from Semperit or DEMITTEL; from PE/EPD, supplied from Telle).
Gaskets	Pipes, valves and fittings	Use of Viton, AFM34, EPDM is recommended.
Hose connections	Transition Hose - pipe	Secure with clips conforming to DIN 2817, available e.g. from the Telle company.

The following recommendation applies in order to achieve an optimum motor heatsink (enclosure) lifetime:

- Engineer a closed cooling circuit with cooling unit manufactured out of stainless steel that dissipates the heat through a water-water heat exchanger.
- All other components such as cooling circuit cables and fittings manufactured out of ABS, stainless steel or general construction steel.

## **Cooling system manufacturers**

ait-deutschland GmbH	www.kkt-chillers.com
BKW Kälte-Wärme-Versorgungstechnik GmbH	www.bkw-kuema.de
DELTATHERM Hirmer GmbH	www.deltatherm.de
Glen Dimplex Deutschland GmbH	www.riedel-cooling.com
Helmut Schimpke und Team Industriekühlanlagen GmbH + Co. KG	www.schimpke.org
Hydac System GmbH	www.hydac.com
Hyfra Industriekühlanlagen GmbH	www.hyfra.de
Pfannenberg GmbH	www.pfannenberg.com

## Note

#### Other manufacturers

You can also use equivalent products from other manufacturers.

Responsibility for the properties of third-party products resides with the plant manufacturer.

Consider the following pressure conditions when designing the cooling circuit.

#### Permissible pressure

• Define the working pressure based on the flow conditions in the supply and return pipes of the cooling circuit.

The maximum permitted pressure in the cooling circuit is 0.6 MPa (6 bar).

#### Note

If you use a pump that reaches a higher pressure, maintain a maximum pressure of 0.6 MPa by taking appropriate measures (pressure relief valve, pressure control, etc.).

- Design the cooling circuit to have the smallest possible pressure difference between the supply and return pipes so that pumps with a shallow characteristic curve can be used.
- Design the cooling circuit with a self-cleaning filter to avoid blockage and corrosion.

#### Pressure drop in the motor

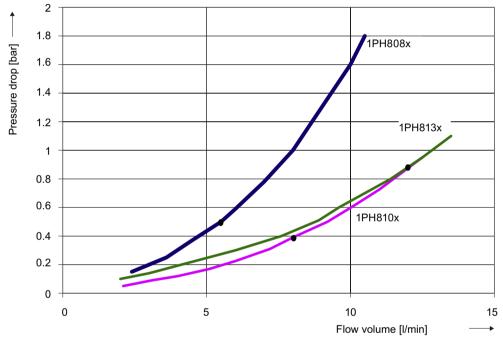


Figure 4-2 Pressure drop in the cooling pipe system, shaft heights 80 to 132

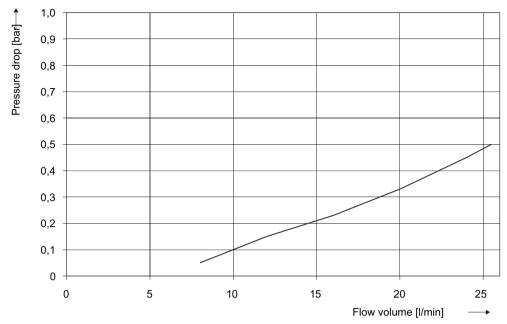


Figure 4-3 Pressure drop in the cooling pipe system, shaft height 160

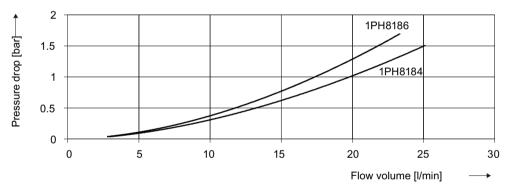


Figure 4-4 Pressure drop in the cooling pipe system, shaft height 180

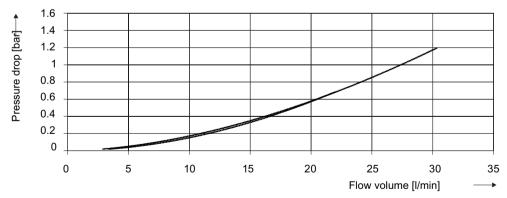


Figure 4-5 Pressure drop in the cooling pipe system, shaft height 225

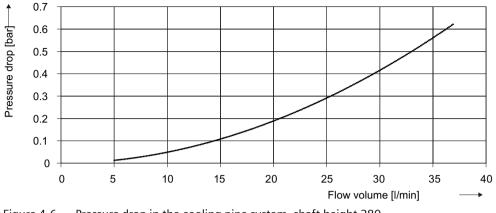


Figure 4-6 Pressure drop in the cooling pipe system, shaft height 280

#### Note

#### Ensuring adequate cooling

To ensure adequate cooling, comply with the minimum flow rates specified under Point "Cooling data and sound pressure levels".

#### **Pressure equalization**

If various components are connected up in the cooling circuit, it may be necessary to provide pressure equalization.

#### Note

#### Arrangement of the reactor element

Flow restrictors must be mounted on the cooling water outlet of the motor or the relevant component!

#### Avoiding cavitation

During uninterrupted duty, the pressure drop across a converter or motor must not exceed 0.2 MPa (2 bar). Otherwise, the high flow rate results in damage due to cavitation and/or abrasion.

#### Connecting motors in series

For the following reasons, Siemens only conditionally recommends connecting motors in series:

- The required flow rates of the motors must be approximately the same (< a factor of 2)
- An increase in the cooling water temperature can result in having to derate the second or third motor if the maximum cooling water inlet temperature is exceeded.

#### Cooling water inlet temperature

#### Note

#### Cooling water inlet temperature

Select the cooling water inlet temperature so that condensation does not form on the surface of the motor.

Cooling water temperatures which are lower than the ambient temperature tend to result in increased water condensation. The difference between the cooling water inlet temperature and the ambient temperature depends on the relative air humidity. For instance, 50 % air humidity at an ambient temperature of 40 °C corresponds to a temperature difference of 10 K:  $T_{cool} > T_{ambient}$  – temperature difference

Please note that you must also shut off the flow of cooling water when the motor is not operational for prolonged periods of time.

The motors are designed for operation up to a cooling water inlet temperature of +30 °C, provided that all of the specified motor data is complied with. If the cooling water inlet temperature deviates from this, the continuous torque will change (see table "Derating factors").

Installation altitude above sea level	(	Cooling water ir	llet temperatur	e
m	≤ 30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C
1000	1.00	0.95	0.90	0.84
1500	0.97	0.92	0.87	0.81
2000	0.93	0.88	0.84	0.78
2500	0.91	0.86	0.82	0.76
3000	0.89	0.85	0.80	0.75
3500	0.87	0.83	0.78	0.73
4000	0.85	0.81	0.77	0.71

Table 4-10 Derating factors

#### Cooling data and sound pressure levels

The specified values refer to operation at the rated speed with rated torque. The cooling water temperature must be  $\leq$  30° C.

Shaft height	Flow rate, min. I/min	Pressure drop bar	Sound pressure level L <sub>pA</sub> (1 m) Motor rated load, tolerance +3 dB dB	Thread con- nection at NDE Inch
80	6	0.6	68 <sup>1)</sup>	G 1/8
100	8	0.4		G 1/4
132	12	0.9		G 3/8
160	15	0.2	69 <sup>1)</sup>	G1/2

Table 4-11Cooling data and sound pressure levels

Shaft height	Flow rate, min. I/min	Pressure drop bar	Sound pressure level L <sub>pA</sub> (1 m) Motor rated load, tolerance +3 dB dB	Thread con- nection at NDE Inch
180 (1PH8184)	15	0.6	70 <sup>2)</sup>	G 3/8
180 (1PH8186)	15	0.7		G3/8
225 (1PH8221) (asynchronous)	20	0.6		G 3/8
225 (1PH8222) (synchronous)	25	0.9	70 <sup>3)</sup>	G 3/8
280	35	0.6	72 <sup>3)</sup>	G 1/2

1) For a rated pulse frequency of 4 kHz and speed range up to 5000 r/min

2) For a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz or 4 kHz and speed ranges for SH 180 of up to 5000 r/min
SH 225 up to 4500 r/min
3) For a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz and speed ranges for

SH 225 of up to 4500 per r/min

SH 280 up to 3300 r/min

#### Heat loss to be dissipated

The values for the heat loss to be dissipated are specified according to the rated point in Chapter "Technical tables and characteristics."

#### Water specification

#### **Cooling water quality**

The values specified for the cooling water correspond to the requirements for a closed cooling circuit. Not all specified concentrations will occur in the cooling water at the same time.

A filter can be used to ensure smooth operation. The grade of filtration should be no less than 100  $\mu m.$ 

#### Cooling water inlet temperature

The maximum cooling water inlet temperature is 30 °C (86 °F)

#### **Cooling water specifications**

Table 4-12	Cooling water	specifications	(SH 80 to 160)

Component	Quality of the water used as coolant for motors with stain- less steel pipes + cast iron or steel jacket
pH value	6 9
Total hardness	< 170 ppm
Electrical conductivity	< 500 μS/cm
Chloride ions	< 40 ppm, can be achieved by adding deionized water.
Sulfate ions	< 50 ppm

Component	Quality of the water used as coolant for motors with stain- less steel pipes + cast iron or steel jacket
Nitrate ions	< 50 ppm
Dissolved solids	< 340 ppm
Maximum particle size	< 100 μm
Operating pressure	< max. 6 bar
Pressure drop at V(N)	< 1 bar
Inlet temperature	< 30 °C
Anti-freeze protection / corrosion pro- tection	20 30 %
NALCO 00GE056 inhibitor	0.2 0.25%

Table 4-13 Cooling water specifications (SH 180 to 280)

Component	Quality of the water used as coolant for motors with stain- less steel pipes
pH value	69
Total hardness	< 170 ppm
Electrical conductivity	< 2000 µS/cm
Chloride ions	< 250 ppm, can be obtained by adding deionized water.
Sulfate ions	< 240 ppm
Nitrate ions	< 50 ppm
Dissolved solids	< 340 ppm
Maximum particle size	< 100 µm
Operating pressure	< max. 6 bar
Pressure drop at V(N)	< 1 bar
Inlet temperature	< 30 °C
Anti-freeze protection / corrosion pro- tection	20 30 %
NALCO 00GE056 inhibitor	0.2 0.25%

#### Note

#### Deionized water (for Cooling water specifications tables)

We recommend using deionized water with reduced conductivity (5 ... 10  $\mu$ S/cm). If necessary, ask your water utility to provide the values. According to 98/83/EC, drinking water may contain up to 2500 ppm of chloride!

Manufacturers of chemical additives can provide support when analyzing the water that is available on the plant side.

#### Note

#### Inhibitor (for Cooling water specifications tables)

The inhibitor is not required if it ensured that the concentration of Antifrogen N is > 20%.

Derating is required for an anti-freeze content of > 30%

#### Biocide

The risk of corrosion caused by microbes is virtually non-existent in chlorinated drinking water systems.

Closed cooling circuits with soft water are susceptible to microbes.

The following types of microbes are encountered in practice:

- Slime-forming bacteria
- Corrosive bacteria
- Iron-depositing bacteria

The suitability of a biocide depends on the type of microbe.

• Analyze the cooling water for microbes at least once a year.

Necessary biocides can be obtained from the manufacturer, e.g. Nalco. Ask the manufacturer for compatibility with an inhibitor used in your system.

• Dose the biocide as recommended by the manufacturer.

Antifrogen N already acts like a biocide at the minimum concentration of > 20%.

#### Note

#### Compatibility of coolant additives

Biocides and Antifrogen N must not be mixed.

There are other manufacturers of chemical additives in the market. You can use equivalent products from other manufacturers. Have the suitability of the third-party products determined.

#### Other coolants (not water-based)

If you use different cooling media (e.g. oil, cooling lubricant), derating may be necessary in order to comply with the thermal motor limit.

#### Note

#### Derating when using other cooling lubricants

Derating is required for water-oil mixtures with more than 10% oil.

To determine the derating, you need the following values of the coolant at a temperature of 30  $^\circ\text{C}$ :

ρ / kg/m³
c <sub>p</sub> /J/(kg∙K)
λ / W/(K•m)
<i>v l</i> m²/s
V / l/min

The required derating can be obtained from Technical support.

Please send your enquiry to Technical support.

## Manufacturers of chemical additives

Tyforop Chemie GmbH	http://www.tyfo.de
Clariant Produkte Deutschland GmbH (Antifro- gen)	https://www.clariant.com
Cimcool Industrial Products Inc	http://www.cimcool.net
FUCHS PETROLUB SE	http://www.fuchs.com
Hebro Chemie GmbH	http://www.hebro-chemie.de
HOUGHTON Deutschland GmbH	http://www.houghton.com
Nalco Water in Germany (Ecolab)	http://www.nalco.com
Schweitzer-Chemie GmbH	http://www.schweitzer-chemie.de

#### Information regarding third-party products

#### Note

#### Recommendation relating to third-party products

This document contains recommendations relating to third-party products. Siemens accepts the fundamental suitability of these third-party products.

You can use equivalent products from other manufacturers.

Siemens does not accept any warranty for the properties of third-party products.

#### Maintenance and service

Check the level and discoloration or turbidity of the cooling water at least once a year. In addition, every year carefully check as to whether the cooling water still has the permissible specification.

If cooling water has been lost, refill with a previously prepared mixture of deionized water and inhibitor or Antifrogen N.

The motor is connected to the cooling circuit by means of two female threads on the rear of the motor. Which one is the inlet and which one is the outlet can be freely connected.

Coolant connection: See table "Cooling data and sound pressure levels"

The units should be connected with hoses to provide mechanical decoupling (refer to the table "Materials and components of a cooling circuit").

## Commissioning

When required, before connecting the motors and converters to the cooling circuit, the pipes should be flushed in order to avoid dirt entering the motors and converters.

After the units have been installed in the plant, the coolant circuit must be commissioned before the electrical systems.

## 4.2 Degree of protection

#### Degree of protection designation

The degree of protection designation in accordance with EN 60034-5 (IEC 60034-5) is described using the letters "IP" and two digits (e.g. IP64).

IP = International Protection

1st digit = protection against the ingress of foreign bodies 2nd digit = protection against water

When assigning motors to a specific degree of protection class, a standardized, brief test procedure is applied. This can deviate significantly from the actual ambient conditions where the motor is installed.

Attention must be paid to providing suitable sealing of the motor shaft for the selected degree of protection for the motor.

#### Note

#### Suitability of the motor depending on the ambient conditions

Depending on these ambient conditions - such as the chemical properties of dusts or the cooling media used at the installation site - it is only conditionally possible to evaluate the suitability of the motor for the particular environment using the degree of protection (e.g. electrically conductive dusts or aggressive coolant vapors or liquids).

In these cases, the motor must be additionally protected using the appropriate measures.

#### Note

#### Liquids that have collected and/or oil jets

Liquid must be prevented from collecting on the motor shaft as well as jets of oil (or are not permissible at all) - even for versions with radial shaft sealing ring.

4.2 Degree of protection

## **Degrees of protection**

The degrees of protection which are available for the 1PH8 motor series are listed in the following table.

Table 4-14Description of degrees of protection

Motor	Degree of protection	1st code number	2nd code number	
		Touch protection	Protection against ingress of solid foreign bodies	
Forced ventilation (open-circuit ventila- tion)	IP23	Protection against fin- ger contact	Protection against medium- sized, solid foreign bodies above 12 mm Ø	Protection against spray wa- ter up to 60° from the vertical
Forced ventilation (sur- face cooling)	IP55	Full protection against contact	Protection against damaging dust deposits	Splashwater from any direc- tion
Water cooling	IP65	Full protection against contact	Protection against dust	Splashwater from any direc- tion

#### Note

### Routing cables in humid/moist environments

If the motor is mounted in a humid environment, the power and signal cables must be routed as shown in the following figure.

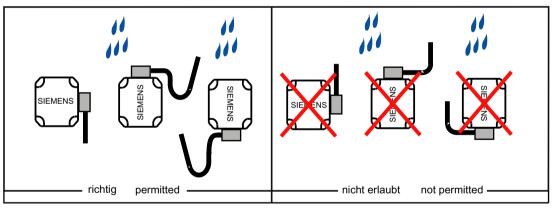
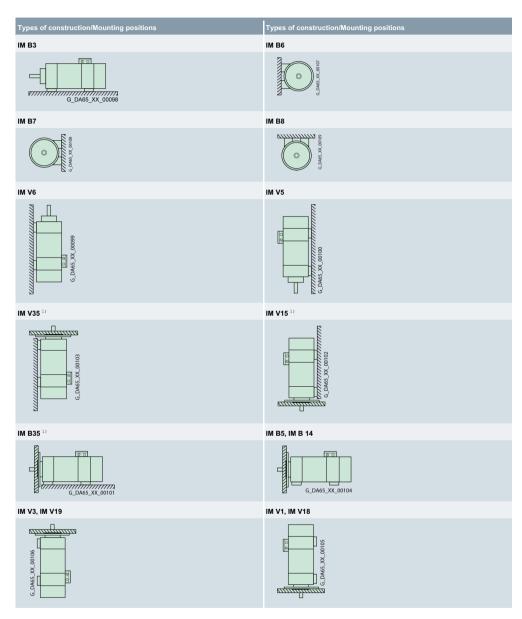


Figure 4-7 Principle of cable routing in a wet/moist environment

## 4.3 Construction types

For correct motor selection, the following types of construction according to EN 60034-7 (IEC 60034-7) apply:



Fixing on the flange and feet is necessary.
 Figure 4-8 Types of construction

You will find the available types of construction in Chapter "Selection and ordering data."

# 4.4 Types of bearing

## 4.4.1 Drive output types and bearing versions

1PH8 motors are suitable for coupling output and belt coupling. The bearing versions and their applications are summarized in the following table.

Table 4-15	Drive output type	with the appro	opriate bearing	g design
				,

Application	Bearing version			
Coupling output	SH 80 to 160	SH 180 to 280		
Planetary gearboxes, low radial forces	O     O       Image: O     Image: O	O     O       Image: O     Image: O		
<ul> <li>Belt coupling with normal radial force</li> <li>Pinion output with straight teeth</li> <li>Belt coupling with increased radial force</li> </ul>	SH 100 to 160	SH 180 to 280		

<sup>1)</sup> Deep-groove ball bearing

- <sup>3)</sup> For the bearing version G or H as a floating bearing (as for 1PH7); all other bearing types have a location bearing at the drive end 14th data position = A, B, C, D, F, L, M, P, Q, or N
- <sup>4)</sup> Version as a location bearing

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2)</sup> Cylindrical-roller bearings (only in versions for increased radial forces - 14th data position = E or F)

## Bearing version, maximum speed and bearing change intervals

Shaft heigh t	Bearing design	Maxi- mum speed n <sub>max</sub> r/min	Average operating speed n <sub>m</sub> r/min	perating bearing bearing replacement in- speed service terval n <sub>m</sub> life t <sub>Lw</sub> r/min L <sub>10h</sub> h		bearing replacement in- terval t <sub>LW</sub>		
				h	Permanent- ly lubricated	Re- lubrication	DE	NDE
80	Standard with locating bear- ing	10,000	≤ 8000	20,000	20,000	-	62207	62207
	Standard	10,000	≤ 6000	20,000	20,000	-	6207	6207
	Performance	15,000	≤ 11,500	12,000	12,000	-	62207	62207
	High Perform- ance	20,000	≤ 13,000	12,000	12,000	-	62207	62207
	Advanced Life- time	5000	≤ 3500	40,000	40,000	-	7205	7205
100	Standard with locating bear- ing	9000	≤ 7000	20,000	20,000	-	6308	62208
	Standard	9000	≤ 5000	20,000	20,000	-	6308	6208
	Performance	12,000	≤ 10,500	12,000	12,000	-	62208	62208
	High Perform- ance	18,000	≤ 11,500	12,000	12,000	-	62208	62208
	Advanced Life- time	5000	≤ 3000	40,000	40,000	-	62210	62208
	Increased radi- al forces	7000	≤ 2300	20,000	20,000	-	NU208 radial. 6208 axial	62208
132	Standard with locating bear- ing	8000	≤ 6500	20,000	20,000	-	6310	62210
	Standard	8000	≤ 4500	20,000	20,000	-	6310	6210
	Performance	10,000	≤ 8500	12,000	12,000	-	62210	62210
	High Perform- ance	15,000	≤ 10,000	12,000	12,000	-	62210	62210
	Advanced Life- time	4500	≤ 2500	40,000	40,000	-	62212	62210
	Increased radi- al forces	6500	≤ 1800	20,000	20,000	-	NU210 radial. 6210 axial	62210

 Table 4-16
 Bearing version, maximum speed and bearing change intervals

Shaft heigh t	Bearing design	Maxi- mum speed n <sub>max</sub> r/min	Average operating speed n <sub>m</sub> r/min	Statistical bearing service life L <sub>10h</sub>	Recommended bearing replacement in- terval t <sub>LW</sub> h		Bearing ty condition mo	
				h	Permanent- ly lubricated	Re- lubrication	DE	NDE
160	Standard with locating bear- ing	6500	≤ 5400	20,000	20,000	-	6312	62212
	Standard	6500	≤ 3500	20,000	20,000	-	6312	6212
	Performance	9000	≤ 7000	12,000	12,000	-	62212	62212
	High Perform- ance	10,000	≤ 8000	12,000	12,000	-	62212	62212
	Advanced Life- time	4000	≤ 2300	40,000	40,000	-	62215	62212
	Increased radi- al forces	5300	≤ 1500	16,000	16,000	-	NU212 radial. 6212 axial	62212
180	Standard with locating bear- ing	5000 (3000) <sup>2)</sup>	≤ 2000	40,000 (24,000) <sup>1)</sup>	20,000	40,000 (24,000) <sup>1)</sup>	6214-C3	6214-C3
	Increased radi- al forces	5000 (3000) <sup>2)</sup>	≤ 2000	20,000 (12,000) <sup>1)</sup>	12,000	20,000 (12,000) <sup>1)</sup>	NU2214-ECP	6214-C3
	Performance	7500	≤ 5000	20,000	12,000	20,000	6214-M/C3	6214- M/C3
225	Standard with locating bear- ing	4500 (2500) <sup>2)</sup>	≤ 1800	40,000 (24,000) <sup>1)</sup>	20,000	40,000 (24,000) <sup>1)</sup>	6216-C3	6216-C3 (insula- ted)
	Increased radi- al forces	4500 (2500) <sup>2)</sup>	≤ 1800	20,000 (12,000) <sup>1)</sup>	12,000	20,000 (12,000) <sup>1)</sup>	NU2216-ECP	6216-C3 (insula- ted)
	Performance	6000	≤ 4000	20,000	12,000	20,000	6216-C3	6216-C3 (insula- ted)
280	Standard with locating bear- ing	3300 (2000) <sup>2)</sup>	≤ 1500	40,000 (24,000) <sup>1)</sup>	20,000	40,000 (24,000) <sup>1)</sup>	6220-C3	6220-C3 (insula- ted)
	Increased radi- al forces	3300 (2000) <sup>2)</sup>	≤ 1500	20,000 (12,000) <sup>1)</sup>	12,000	20,000 (12,000) <sup>1)</sup>	NU220-C3	6220-C3 (insula- ted)

<sup>1)</sup> When vertically mounted

 $^{\rm 2)}$   $\,$  For types of construction IM V3, IM B5, and IM V1  $\,$ 

You can calculate the average operating speed  ${\sf n}_{\sf m}$  for alternating bearing load by the following formula:

$$n_{\rm m} = \frac{n_1 t_1 + n_2 t_2 + \dots + n_i t_i}{100}$$

Formula symbol	Unit	Description	
t <sub>1</sub> t <sub>n</sub>	%	Time percentage of the bearing load	
n <sub>1</sub> n <sub>n</sub>	r/min	Operating speed	

You therefore calculate an average speed from the different speeds according to their time percentages.

 Table 4-17
 Recommended bearing change intervals at maximum speed

Shaft height	Bearing version	Maximum speed n <sub>max</sub>	Statistical bearing service life L <sub>10h</sub>	Recommended bear terv t <sub>LV</sub> h	val
		r/min	h	Permanent lubrica- tion	Relubrication
80	Performance	15,000	8000	8000	_
	High Performance	20,000	8000	8000	-
100	Performance	12,000	8000	8000	-
	High Performance	18,000	8000	8000	-
132	Performance	10,000	8000	8000	-
	High Performance	15,000	8000	8000	-
160	Performance	9000	8000	8000	-
	High Performance	10,000	8000	8000	-

Table 4-18 "Premium Performance" bearing version, maximum speed and bearing change intervals

Shaft height	Maximum speed n <sub>max</sub> r/min	Average operating speed n <sub>m</sub> r/min	Recommended be ment inte t <sub>LW</sub> h	• •
			with sealing air (Option Q12)	without seal- ing air
80	24,000	< 16,000	12,000	
		< 19,200*	10,000	8000
		24,000	7000	4000

Speed backlash with:

t1 = 10 min, n1 = 0

t2 = 30 min, n2 = 16,000 r/min

t3 = 60 min, n3 = 24,000 r/min

#### Note

#### Difficult operating conditions in operation at n<sub>max</sub>

Under difficult operating conditions, the bearing replacement intervals  $t_{\mbox{\tiny LW}}$  are reduced by up to 50 %.

Difficult operating conditions include

- large vibrations and shocks
- frequent reversing operation

#### Note

#### **Reduced maximum motor speeds**

The maximum speeds might be reduced on motors with integrated encoder as a result of mechanical conditions or limitations imposed by signal conditioning capacity.

The reduced maximum speeds can be found in the table "Encoder types for motors with DRIVE-CLiQ" in Chapter Encoder assignment as a function of maximum permissible speeds (Page 160).

#### Note

#### Permanently switching on the sealing air

For the "Premium Performance" bearing version, Siemens recommends that the sealing air be permanently switched on during continuous operation at  $n_{max}$ . Sealing air connection and conditioning are described in Chapter "Sealing air connection (option Q12) (Page 169)."

## 4.4.2 Bearing lifetime

The bearing lifetime is limited by material fatigue (fatigue service life) and/or lubrication failure (grease service life). The fatigue lifetime (statistical bearing lifetime  $L_{10h}$ ) mainly depends the mechanical load. The correlation is shown in the radial force/axial force diagrams. The values are determined according to DIN/ISO 281.

The grease lifetime is mainly dependent on the bearing size, speed, temperature as well as the vibrational load.

The grease lifetime can be extended by especially favorable operating conditions (low or average speed, low bearing temperatures, low radial force or vibration load).

A reduction of the grease lifetime can be expected for difficult operating conditions and when motors are mounted vertically.

## Lifetime lubrication (without relubrication)

#### Note

For lifetime lubrication, the grease lifetime is harmonized with the bearing lifetime  $L_{10h}$ .

## Bearing change interval ( $t_{LW}$ )

The recommended bearing change intervals are obtained from the inter-dependencies mentioned above for a specific operating point such as:

- Coupling output or belt coupling
- Coolant temperature up to max. +40 °C (forced ventilation)
- Cooling water inlet temperature up to max. +30 °C (water cooling)
- Complying with the permissible radial and axial forces (refer to Chapter "Radial and axial forces")

- Complying with the maximum permissible speeds (refer to Chapter "Technical data and characteristics")
- The bearing change intervals are reduced for unfavorable operating conditions, for example
  - average speed > than the value specified in Table 4-16
  - continuous operation at n<sub>max</sub>
  - Vibration and shock load
  - Frequent reversing operation

#### Note

#### Replacing the motor bearings

When replacing the motor bearings, we also recommend that encoders with their own bearings are also replaced.

The fatigue life and the grease consumption time are calculated, statistical values and cannot be warranted.

#### Note

#### Axial bearing loads for vertical mounting

The increased axial loads imposed on the bearings on vertically mounted motors can reduce the bearing lifetime by almost 50%. This applies to shaft heights 180 to 280 due to the rotor weights.

#### Relubrication

In motors that can be relubricated, the bearing life can be extended by complying with fixed relubrication intervals.

Depending on the frame size, some restrictions have to be taken into account - e.g. vertical mounting/shaft position.

It is possible to relubricate motors, shaft heights 180 and 225. A lubricating nipple is optionally provided, Code K40.

#### **Relubrication intervals**

Relubrication intervals are specified:

- on the lubrication plate of the motor
- in the table "Relubrication intervals"

#### Note

#### Longer time periods between delivering and commissioning the motor

For longer periods of time (e.g. longer than 1 relubrication interval) between shipping and commissioning the motor, the bearings must be lubricated. When relubricating, the shaft must be rotated in order to distribute the grease around the bearings (for additional information, see the Operating Instructions).

The values specified in the table below apply to the same conditions as are described above for bearing change intervals:

Shaft height	Bearing version	Relubrication inter- val in operating hours <sup>4)</sup> h	Quantity of grease for each relubrica- tion operation <sup>1)</sup> g	Grease cham- ber <sup>2)</sup> g	Possible number of relubrication inter- vals <sup>3)</sup>
180	Standard	7000	15	80	5
	Increased radial forces	4000	20	80	4
	Performance	4000	15	80	5
225	Standard	7000	30	180	6
	Increased radial forces	4000	40	180	4
	Performance	4000	30	180	6
280	Standard	7000	40	400	10
	Increased radial forces	4000	50	400	8

Table 4-19Relubrication intervals

<sup>1)</sup> Grease quantity for relubrication for normal conditions (ambient temperature up to 40°C, horizontal mounting.

<sup>2)</sup> Holding capacity of the grease chamber with precise adherence to the grease quantity for each relubrication interval.

<sup>3)</sup> Calculated number of re-lubricating intervals; the bearing lifetime is specified statistically by means of the  $L_{10h}$  definition.

<sup>4)</sup> Relubricating intervals must be halved for vertically mounted units.

#### Note

#### Adapting relubricating intervals

Unfavorable factors such as the effects of mounting/installation, speed or mechanical loads require that the relubricating intervals are appropriately adapted. Situations such as these require special consideration or must be calculated - and must be engineered according to the limitations and constraints together with the responsible motor plant.

The increased axial loads imposed on the bearings on vertically mounted motors can reduce the bearing lifetime by almost 50%. This applies to shaft heights 180 to 280 due to the rotor weights.

A check which takes into account the relevant boundary conditions must be performed on SH 280 in the relevant motor factory.

## 4.4.3 NDE bearings, insulated version (option L27)

#### Relevant, additional bearing currents

When compared to a pure sinusoidal supply, the pulsed output voltage of a frequency converter results in additional motor bearing currents. The relevant additional bearing currents are:

- Circulating currents
- EDM currents
- Rotor ground currents

#### Factors that influence bearing currents

Above a certain magnitude, bearing currents result in localized melting at the bearing rings and rolling assemblies as well as lubricant wear. This reduces the bearing lifetime. Essential influencing factors include:

- Motor speed and associated operating time
- Pulse frequency of the frequency converter
- Grounding relationships between the motor and the connected load

### Application for option L27

At speeds 500 r/min, the load due to bearing currents increases significantly. Option L27 is always required if the motor is operated in the speed range between 0 ... 500 r/min for a longer period of time. Without option L27, the total operating time in the speed range 0 ... 500 r/min may be a maximum of 800 h (for an assumed bearing change interval ( $t_{LW}$ ) of the bearings of 20,000 h).

Shaft height	Bearing change interval (t <sub>LW</sub> ) for lifetime lubrication h <sup>1)</sup>	Options that are required	Comment
80 - 160	20,000	-	Due to the experience from the field (in practice) no dangers have been identified due to bearing cur- rents
180		L27	Insulated NDE bearings
225		-	Generally insulated NDE bearings
280		-	Generally insulated NDE bearings

T-LL- 1 20	Measures that are required for operation in the speed range $< 500$ r/min	
1anie 4-70	Measures that are required for operation in the speed range $< 5000$ r/min	4

1) Definition, refer to the table "Recommended bearing change intervals"

#### Motor grounding

In order to avoid rotor ground currents, the motor frame should be well grounded - e.g. by using shielded motor cables. The motor cable shield should be connected at both ends through the largest possible surface area.

For specific applications, the grounding of the motor  $Z_{hg}$  can be more unfavorable than the grounding of the connected loads  $Z_{rg}$ , e.g. for long motor cables and when the motor is mounted in an insulated fashion. In this case, the capacitive discharge (leakage) current of the motor flows from the motor frame through the motor shaft to the connected load and from there to ground.

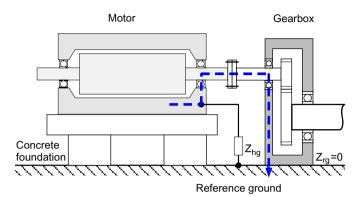


Figure 4-9 Bearing current due to the grounding situation (=rotor ground current)

The rotor ground current should be avoided by using an electrically insulating coupling. If such a coupling cannot be used for mechanical reasons, then the motor frame must be connected to the load through the largest possible surface area. The capacitive discharge (leakage) current then flows from the motor frame to the load and not through the bearings. The connection between the motor frame and load is only effective if it represents an extremely low impedance for the high-frequency discharge (leakage) current. To achieve this, use several flat straps, e.g. grounding straps, metal plates.

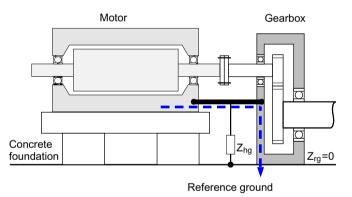


Figure 4-10 Connection between the motor frame and load to avoid rotor ground currents

## 4.5 Shaft end

The DE shaft end is cylindrical in accordance with DIN 748 Part 3 (IEC 60072-1).

## 4.6 Mounting of rotating unions on 1PH8 hollow-shaft motors

## **General information**

1PH8 main motors with a hollow shaft (13th position in the Article No.: " 3 ") are designed as main spindle motors for machine tools and machining centers with internal tool cooling. A rotating union is required for the provision of the coolant in the rotating motor shaft. A rotor-supported or, for a motor ordered with option Y64, a bearingless, frame-supported rotating union can be mounted on the NDE shaft extension. In addition to coolant, suitable rotating unions can also transfer oil mist (minimum quantity lubrication), cutting oils or even compressed air at standstill.

Rotor-supported rotating unions consist of the following components:

- Rotor with bearing
- Stator
- Enclosure with cable connections
- Floating-ring shaft seal

Rotor-supported rotating unions are easy to fit and change. They are screwed into the motor shaft via the thread on the rotor. The advantage of these rotating unions is the leading off of the leakage via the housing and the integrated leakage connection.

Bearingless, frame-supported rotating unions are made up of two separate parts, the rotating part with a mechanical seal and the static part with a mechanical seal and supply connection. By eliminating the bearings, higher speeds can be achieved and the rotating union is less sensitive to vibrations and lateral loads. However, an adapter such as is described in Ch. "Suggestion for an adapter for bearingless, frame-supported rotating unions" for installing the rotating union is required.

Installation must be performed very carefully because the sealing surfaces of the mechanical seal are not protected.

The rotating part is bolted into the NDE end of the motor shaft. The static part is mounted on the encoder cover of the motor via an adapter. The adapter must include a facility for draining leakage. The adapter must be designed in such a way that the motor is not flooded by the leakage and the degree of protection of the motor is complied with. It may be necessary to use sealing air.

For use of a bearingless rotating union, the motor must be ordered with option Y64 and the interface on the encoder cover must be located concentrically with respect to the shaft. The mounting conditions stated by the manufacturer of the rotating union must be met.

Depending on the type of rotating unions, the sealing rings may be permanently or temporarily in contact.

Example of a closed seal: DEUBLIN series 1116 and 1108

Example of an opening seal: DEUBLIN series 902 and 1109

With opening seals, the sealing surfaces are separated when there is no coolant pressure, e.g. during a tool change. In this case, coolant runs out of the supply line and out of the motor shaft through the opened seal. This leakage and also the leakage due to wear of the sealing rings must be guided away via the leakage lines.

## NOTICE

#### Motor failure due to incorrectly mounted leakage line

If the leakage line does not lead downward, the leakage can flood the rotating union and the motor. This can result in failure of the rotating union and motor.

To ensure the leakage is led away, the leakage line must always lead downward so that nothing can flow back.

• When mounting, ensure that the leakage line always leads downward.

#### NOTICE

#### Axial forces due to coolant pressure

Coolant under high pressure (usually 40 to 90 bar) flows via the mounted rotating union through the sequence of holes in the drive train:

- Rotating union
- Motor
- Spindle
- Tool.

Due to the different hole diameters and the gap, different cross sections (areas) occur along the coolant flow, which can produce axial forces due to the coolant pressure. These can be 4 to 12.7 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, depending on the coolant pressure.

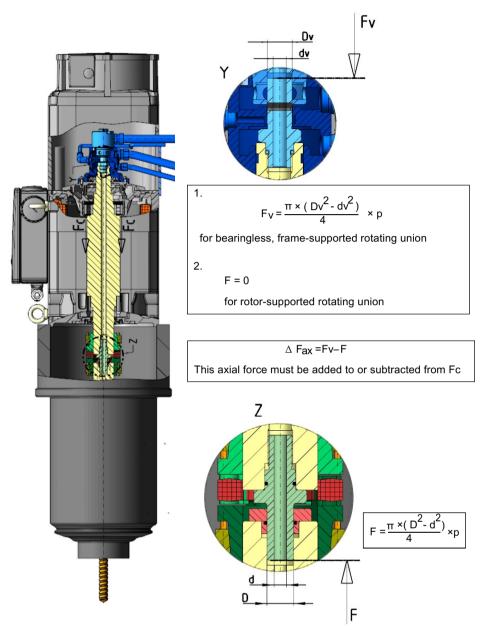


Figure 4-11 Mounting the rotating union

Figure "Mounting the rotating union," illustrates how an axial force arises due to joint pressure, for example, in the gap between the motor shaft (hole bolt) and the spindle shaft. This acts upon the motor shaft against the bearing preloading force  $F_c$ . This reduces or even eliminates the preloading force of the motor bearing.

For bearingless, frame-supported rotating unions, axial forces can also arise depending on the internal differing hole diameters. These act against the forces from the joint, so they have a smaller effect on the bearing preloading force. Ensure that the axial forces from the rotating union are greater than those from the joint (see case 1 in the graphic). This has the advantage that the bearing preloading force remains unchanged. The bearing preloading force is important for non-slip running of the motor bearing and must not be eliminated. This advantage does not apply to rotor-supported rotating unions. It is important to ensure that the preloading force of the motor bearing is not eliminated (see figure "Mounting the rotating union" case 2). The axial force toward the motor must not be in the interval  $F_{AZ}$  =  $F_c$  +/- 25% for horizontally mounted motors and  $F_{AZ} = (F_c + 1/25\%) + FL$  for vertically mounted motors with the shaft extension pointing downward. For maximum permissible axial forces at the shaft extension, the specifications stated in Chapter "Radial and axial forces" apply. The axial forces that act in the rotating union must be requested from the manufacturer.

#### Hollow shaft version

	1PH808□	1PH810□ 1PH816□
Thread on DE	M12 x 1.25-RH	M16 x 1.5-RH
Centering on DE	Ø16H7	Ø20H7
Thread on NDE	M12 x 1.25-LH	M16 x 1.5-LH
Centering on NDE	Ø14 +0.008/+0.001	Ø18 +0.007/-0.003
Through-hole	Ø8	Ø11.5
Key surface NDE	SW19	SW27

Table 4-21	Hollow shaft version
------------	----------------------

#### 4.6.1 Rotor-supported rotating union

NOTICE
Leaks in the rotating union
If there are leaks in the rotating union and the hoses, the motor may be flooded and fail!

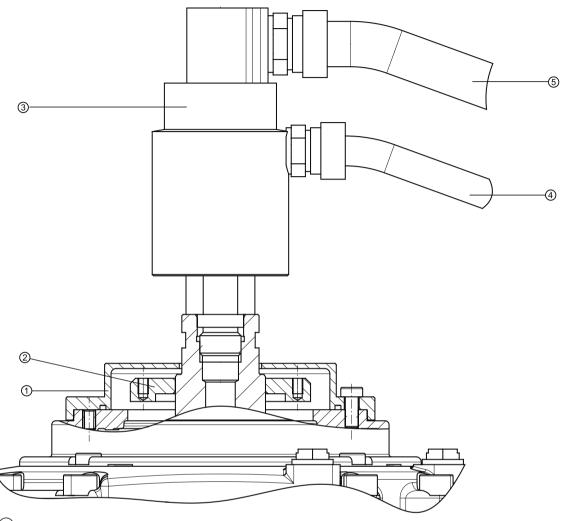
• Avoid leaks in the rotating union.

Note the following points when mounting the rotating union:

- When you mount the rotating union, pay attention to special aspects that differ between aircooled and water-cooled motors.
- When installing the rotating union, observe the manufacturer's data.

## Mounting on water-cooled motors

Water-cooled motors have a "2" in the 11th position in the Article No. With water-cooled motors, you can mount the rotating union directly on the motor. Use rotating unions with radial or axial connections.



#### Mounting rotor-supported rotating union on water-cooled motors

- 1 Sealing cover
- 2 Balancing disk
- 3 Rotor-supported rotating union, e.g. DEUBLIN 1109-020-188
- 4 Leakage hose
- 5 Inlet hose

### Mounting on air-cooled motors

Air-cooled motors have a "0" or a "1" in the 11th position of the Article No. Air-cooled motors are equipped with an intermediate housing between the motor and the axially mounted fan. The intermediate housing is used to accommodate the rotating union.

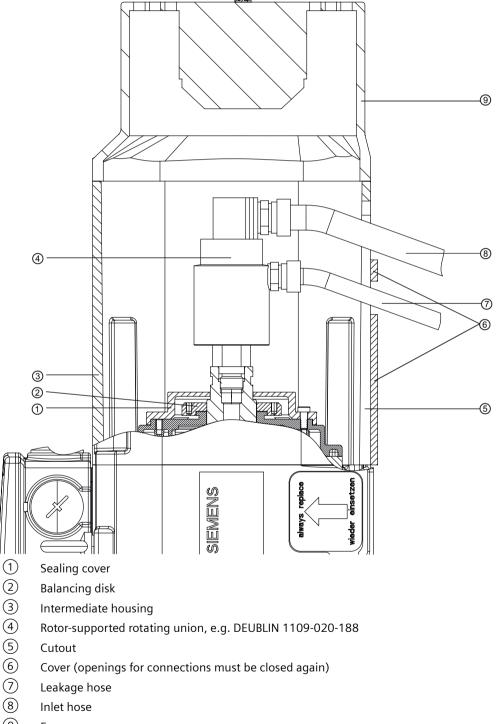
The intermediate housing is suitable for rotating unions with the following dimensions:

- Length up to 120 mm (without rotor connection thread and centering)
- Diameter up to 55 mm

Due to limitations of space, rotating unions with radial connections are advisable for air-cooled motors, e.g. DEUBLIN 1109-020-188.

Rotating unions with axial connections are not suitable!

#### Mounting rotor-supported rotating unions on air-cooled motors



#### Note

When air-cooled motors are connected, only rotating unions with a radial connection are used.

# Mounting steps 1.

#### Note

#### Mounting steps for air-cooled motors

The mounting steps 1, 11, 12, 13, and 14 are only required for air-cooled motors.

- 1. Remove the fan and intermediate housing from the motor.
- 2. If necessary, perform complete balancing of the motor using the exterior balancing disks. To do this, remove the sealing cover.

#### Note

#### Sealing cover

- Remount the sealing cover after balancing.
- The sealing cover is required to comply with the degree of protection.
- 3. Attach hoses for the inlet and leakage to the rotating union. Use angle elements if necessary.

#### Note

#### Rotating union to be used

- Use a rotating union with radial connections.
- 4. Screw the rotating union into the NDE motor shaft extension. Tighten the rotating union with the correct tightening torque. For this, use the wrench grip surface on the NDE motor shaft extension to hold the other side.
- 5. Position the rotating union horizontally in such a way that the leakage connection is at the lowest point.
- 6. Always connect the hose for leakage sloping downward at least 15°.
- 7. Also connect the hose for the inlet sloping downward.
- 8. If necessary, provide a ventilation hose for the leakage chamber. It equalizes the negative pressure caused by the fan. Lead the ventilation hose upward.
- 9. Manually check that the rotor turns easily.
- 10. Test the mounting under pressure for leaks.
- 11. Make a burr-free cutout in the intermediate housing for the inlet and leakage hoses.

- 12. Push the intermediate housing with the cutout over the hoses. Screw the intermediate housing onto the motor. Protect the hoses from mechanical stresses.
- 13. Screw the fan onto the intermediate housing.
- 14. Seal the remaining openings between the cutout and the hoses.

## 4.6.2 Bearingless, frame-supported rotating union

The bearingless frame-supported rotating union cannot be mounted directly on the motor. An adapter is required for the static part of the rotating union. The adapter is not included in the scope of delivery and must be made by the customer to match the rotating union to be used.

Carefully comply with the design notes:

- Match the adapter to hold the static part to the rotating union to be used. To do this, carefully comply with the dimensions of the manufacturer of the rotating union. Implement the adapter as shown in Chapter "Suggestion for an adapter for bearingless, frame-supported rotating unions".
- The gap between the adapter and the NDE shaft extension must be as small as possible in the radial direction (approx. 0.25 mm) and be as long as possible in the axial direction so that coolant that escapes cannot enter the motor. The leakage connections must be as large as possible and must be provided at the lowest point in the leakage chamber. The leakage connection (G3/8") located nearest the static part of the rotating union is for draining leakage away during operation. The second leakage connection (G1/4") is a backup for draining away increased leakage due to faults.

#### NOTICE

#### Monitoring the backup line

Monitor the flow rate of the backup line to detect any faults in the rotating union in good time, and to protect the motor from flooding.

- Make sure that a signal is output in the event of leakage.
- Make sure that the system (coolant supply) is switched off in case of a fault.
- Implement the star-shaped drainage openings in the mounting surface to the encoder cover as shown in Chapter "Suggestion for an adapter for bearingless, frame-supported rotating unions" so that liquid cannot penetrate the motor through the labyrinth seal between the encoder cover and the balancing disk. If the motor is mounted vertically, all 6 drainage holes should be opened; if the motor is mounted horizontally, it is enough to open the two lower drainage holes.

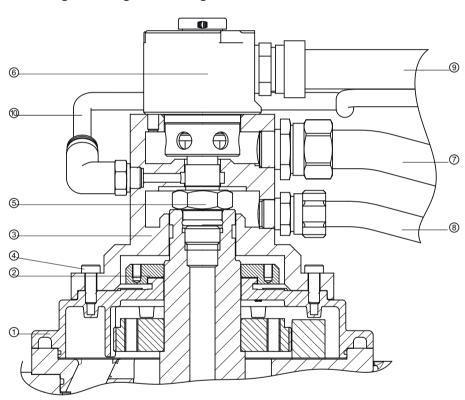
#### Note

Provide a sealing air connection to protect the motor against the penetration of coolant.

• The diameters and end faces of the adapter for supporting the encoder cover or the static part of the rotating union should be turned in one clamping if possible. For simpler machining, the adapter can be axially split. It is important that the finish-machining of the support diameter and end faces is performed in the assembled condition and in one clamping.

#### Mounting on water-cooled motors

Water-cooled motors have a "2" in the 11th position of Article No. together with option Y64. Use rotating unions with radial or axial connections.



#### Mounting a bearingless rotating union on a water-cooled motor

- 1 Encoder cover
- 2 Balancing disk
- 3 Adapter
- 4 6 x M5 bolts
- 5 Rotating part of the rotating union, e.g. DEUBLIN 1129-050-301
- 6 Static part of the rotating union, e.g. DEUBLIN 1129-050-301
- 7 Leakage hose (min. internal diam. 12 mm)
- 8 Leakage hose as backup and for faults
- 9 Inlet hose
- 10 Sealing air connection

## Mounting on air-cooled motors

Air-cooled motors have a "0" or a "1" in the 11th position of Article No. together with option Y64.

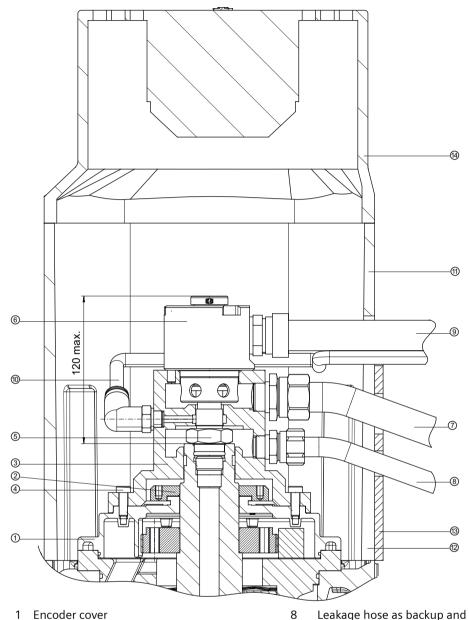
Air-cooled motors are equipped with an intermediate housing between the motor and the axially mounted fan. The intermediate housing is used to accommodate the rotating union. It is suitable for rotary glands up to a length (without rotor connection thread and centering) of 120 mm and a diameter of up to 55 mm. Due to space limitations, rotating unions with radial connections are recommended for air-cooled motors, e.g. DEUBLIN 1129-050-301. Rotating unions with axial connections are also possible in short versions, e.g. DEUBLIN 1129-730-731. In this case, a bracket must be used at the axial connection to which the supply hose is connected. The 120 mm dimension must not be exceeded when a bracket is used.

### NOTICE

#### Sealing the remaining holes

Seal the remaining holes again between the cutout and the hoses to ensure that motor cooling is still effective.

Mounting of bearingless rotating union on an air-cooled motor



- Encoder cover 1
- Balancing disk 2
- 3 Adapter
- 6 x M5 bolts 4
- 5 Rotating part of the rotating union, e.g. DEU-BLIN 1129-050-301
- 6 Static part of the rotating union, e.g. DEUBLIN 1129-050-301
- Leakage hose (min. internal diam. 12 mm) 7

- Leakage hose as backup and for faults
- 9 Inlet hose
- 10 Sealing air connection
- Intermediate housing 11
- 12 Cutout
- 13 Cover (reclose the openings for the connections)
- 14 Fan

# Mounting steps $2^{1}$

#### Note

#### Mounting steps for air-cooled motors

The mounting steps 1, 13, 14, 15, and 16 are only required for air-cooled motors.

- 1. Disassemble the fan and intermediate housing from the the motor.
- 2. Removing the sealing cover
- 3. If necessary, perform complete balancing of the motor with external balancing disks
- 4. Screw the rotating part of the rotating union into the NDE motor shaft extension and tighten with the appropriate torque (against the wrench grip surface on the NDE motor shaft extension).
- 5. Mount the adapter for the static part (not included in the scope of delivery) on the encoder cover with 6x M5 screws. Position the adapter in such a way that the leakage connection is at the lowest point (with horizontal mounting).
- 6. Mount the hoses for leakage and sealing air on the adapter, if necessary using angled elements
- 7. Mount the hose for the supply to the static part of the rotating union, if necessary using angled elements
- 8. Screw the static part onto the adapter
- 9. Always connect the hoses for leakage sloping downward (min. 15°).
- 10. Also connect the hose for the inlet sloping downward.
- 11. Manually check that the rotor turns easily.
- 12. Perform a hydrostatic test for leaks
- 13. Make a cutout for the inlet and leakage hoses in the intermediate housing.
- 14. Push the intermediate housing with the inlet over the hoses and screw it to the motor. Protect the hoses from mechanical loads
- 15. Screw the fan on to the intermediate housing
- 16. Seal the remaining openings between the cutout and the hoses

4.6.3

## .3 Mounting information and instructions

- Do not mount any additional anti-rotation pins on rotor-supported rotating unions
- Never screw pipes directly to the rotating union.
- Always use a hose between the rotating union and the fixed piping. To do this, route the hoses in curves and torsion-free.

4.6 Mounting of rotating unions on 1PH8 hollow-shaft motors

- First screw the flexible hoses onto the rotor-supported rotating union. Then screw the rotating union onto the shaft with the specified torque.
- Avoid stressing due to incorrect hose lengths and unsuitable mounting material.
- The rotating union must be easy to turn when mounted.
- Keep rotating unions free of chips and burrs.
- Position the rotating union horizontally in such a way that the leakage connection is at the lowest point.
- Always route the leakage hose downward at at least 15° with a large cross-section.
- If the leakage hose is higher than the leakage connection and the mechanical seal is open, the rotating union and possibly also the motor will be flooded. The motor can fail.
- Also route the inlet hose downward. This causes the coolant to flow back in the supply line when the mechanical seal is open (e.g. tool change or standstill) and not through the motor shaft and the leakage connection.
- Filter the coolant so that no particles or chips can reach the mechanical seal and damage it.

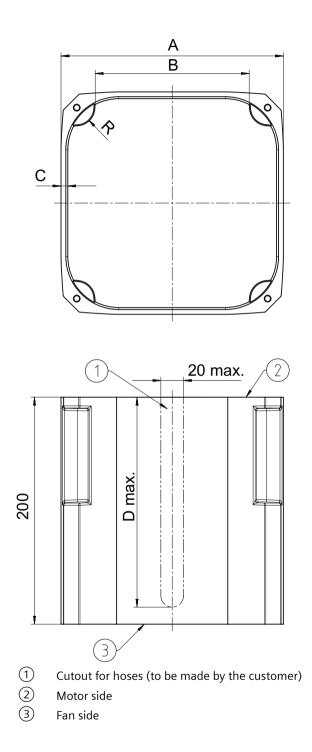
#### Note

#### Mounting the rotating union

- During assembly, screw the thread absolutely tightly into the NDE shaft extension. Ensure that no coolant can leak.
- Check the rotating union and hoses regularly for tightness.

4.6 Mounting of rotating unions on 1PH8 hollow-shaft motors

## Intermediate housing for air-cooled motors



4.6 Mounting of rotating unions on 1PH8 hollow-shaft motors

## Slot dimensions for the intermediate housing

	SH 80	SH100	SH132	SH160
A	155	196	260	314
В	99	133	183	225
C	6	6	7	7
R	16	16	19	19
D	170	185	175	180

# 4.6.4 Suggestion for an adapter for bearingless, frame-supported rotating unions

#### Note

## Comply with the manufacturer's specifications

Comply with the specifications and instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the rotating union.

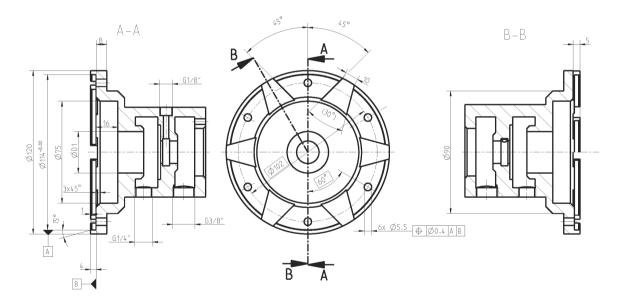


Figure 4-12 Example of the version of an adapter for supporting the static part of a bearingless, frame-supported rotating union

	1PH808.	1PH8101PH816.
Diameter D1	Diam. 22.5 H7	Diam. 30.5 H7

## 4.7.1 Radial force

Do not exceed specific radial forces in order to guarantee perfect operation.

Never exceed the minimum force for any of the different shaft heights. This minimum force is indicated in the radial force diagrams. The diagrams show the radial force  $F_R$ 

- At various operating speeds
- As a function of the bearing lifetime

The force diagrams and tables apply to standard shaft ends at the DE. For smaller shaft diameters, only reduced radial forces may be transmitted or none at all.

For force levels going beyond these, contact your local sales partner.

## NOTICE

#### Premature damage to bearings and shaft breakage due to strong radial forces

Bearings can be prematurely damaged and shafts may break if force transmission elements apply too much load to the shaft end as a result of radial forces.

• When using mechanical transmission elements, ensure that the maximum limit values specified in the radial force diagrams are not exceeded.

## NOTICE

## Premature damage to bearings due to insufficient radial forces

Only for bearings with increased radial force (shaft height 100 to 280):

Insufficiently high radial forces can cause the bearings to roll in an undefined fashion. This results in increased bearing wear.

• For applications with an extremely low radial force load, ensure that the motor shaft is subject to at least the minimum radial force specified in the diagrams. Where the radial force load is less than the minimum radial force, e.g. on a coupling drive, you must not use the bearings for increased radial force. Use a motor with standard bearings for these applications.

## NOTICE

#### Destruction of bearing seats

The motor bearings are designed for operation with radial force. Rotating forces from the process or imbalance > Q 2.5 can destroy the bearing seats. Rotating forces and imbalance can also occur on coupling drives.

• Avoid rotating forces and imbalance.

#### NOTICE

#### Mechanical destruction of the motor

If the motor supports the higher forces when force/torque boosting elements are used, the flange or the feet of the motor, for example, can be torn off.

• Make sure that the force/torque boosting elements, e.g. gearbox or brakes, absorb the greater forces.

Examples of remedies:

- Choose the correct type of construction.
- Pay attention to correct mechanical mounting of the force/torque boosting elements.

#### Note

#### Complying with the belt manufacturer's guidelines

- When dimensioning the radial forces at the shaft extension, ensure that you comply with the regulations of the belt manufacturers.
- Set the belt tension by means of appropriate measuring instruments.

## Calculating the total radial force F<sub>R</sub> for belt couplings

If the belt manufacturer has not provided precise radial force data, the radial force can be approximately determined using the following formula:

$$F_{\rm R}[N] = c \cdot F_{\rm U} \qquad \qquad F_{\rm U}[N] = 2 \cdot 10^7 \cdot P / (n \cdot D)$$

Formula ab- breviations	Unit	Description
c		<ul> <li>Pre-tensioning factor: The pre-tensioning factor is an experience value provided by the belt manufacturer. Values as follows:</li> <li>V-belt: c = 1.5 to 2.5</li> <li>Special plastic belts (flat belts), depending on the load type and belt type c = 2.0 to 2.5</li> </ul>
Fu	Ν	Circumferential force
Р	kW	Motor output
n	r/min	Motor speed
D	mm	Diameter of belt pulley

Table 4-22Explanation of the formula abbreviations

## 4.7.2 Axial force

The axial force acting on the locating bearings comprises the following components:

## - Axial force in operation

- Axial forces acting externally on the motor (e.g. gearbox with helical gearing, machining forces through the tool)
- Axial forces from the coolant pressure of the coolant fed through the rotating union

## - Force due to spring loading of the bearing

# $\cdot$ Where applicable, force exerted by the rotor weight when the motor is vertically mounted

This results in a maximum axial force that is a function of the direction.

# 

## Axial force due to effective hydraulic diameter of the rotating union

Pay attention to the axial force due to the effective hydraulic diameter (area) of the rotating union.

• Force = F [N]

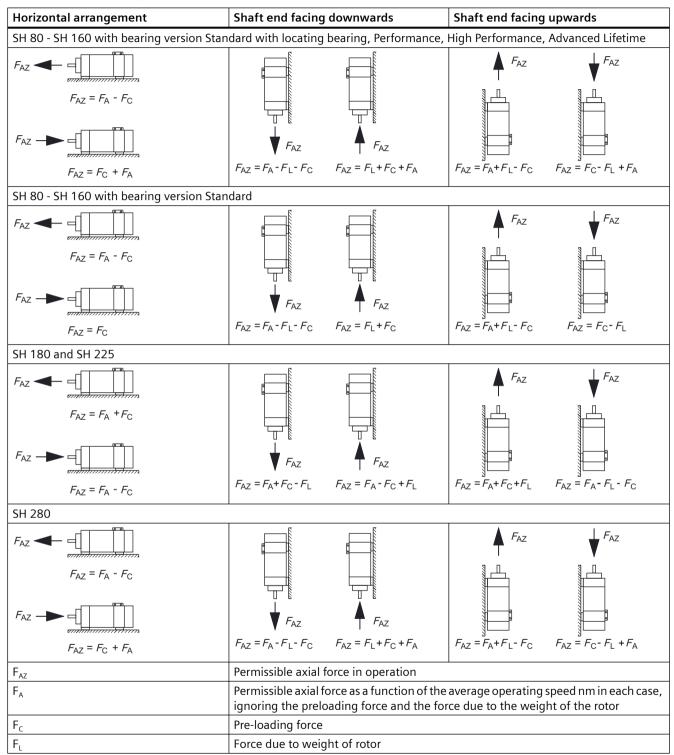
- A = area  $[m^2]$
- p = coolant pressure [N/m<sup>2</sup>]
- $1 \text{ bar} = 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2$

For axial forces in the direction of the motor, the spring-loading of the bearings can be overcome so that the rotor moves in accordance with the axial bearing play (up to 0.2mm). The permissible axial force  $F_{AZ}$  in operation depends on the motor mounting position.

When, for example, helical toothed wheels are used as the drive element, an axial force is exerted on the motor bearings in addition to the radial force. For axial forces in the direction of the motor, the spring-loading of the bearing can be overcome. This must be prevented as otherwise it could reduce the bearing and encoder service life.

The permissible axial force  $F_{AZ}$  in operation depends on the motor mounting position (see table "Calculating the permissible axial force").

#### Table 4-23 Calculating the permissible axial force



# 4.7.3 Permissible radial and axial forces for 1PH808 Premium Performance

For the Premium Performance version of the 1PH808, the following radial and axial forces of the motor shaft are permissible:

Radial force = 100 N	Axial force = 1400 N
The axial force address comprises:	
Rotating union = 950 N	Preloading $F_c = 450 \text{ N}$

## Maximum permissible mechanical load

		DE shaft extension	NDE shaft extension
Maximum radial force		100 N	100 N
Maximum radial force	Solid shaft		
	1 Toward the motor	350 N	-
	2 Away from the motor	950 N	-
	Hollow shaft		
	1 Toward the motor	350 N	950 N
	2 Away from the motor	950 N	350 N

## 4.7.4 Radial and axial force diagrams

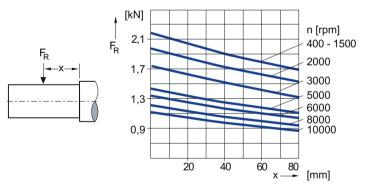


Figure 4-13 SH 80, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

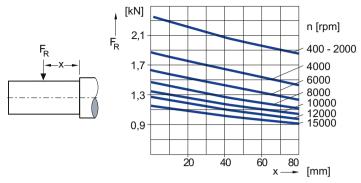


Figure 4-14 SH 80, Performance, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

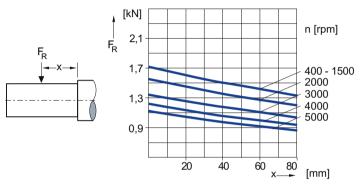


Figure 4-15 SH 80, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

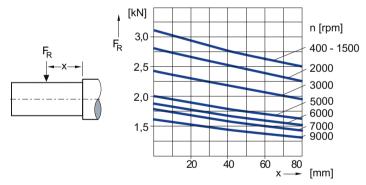
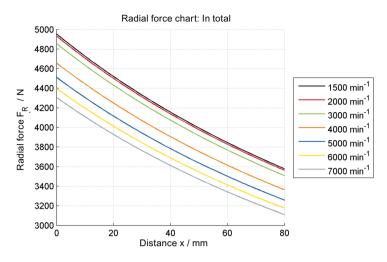
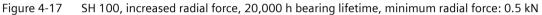


Figure 4-16 SH 100, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

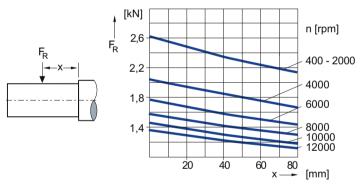




## Note

## Bearing with increased radial force

The roller bearings used here could sustain damage if they are operated under no load.





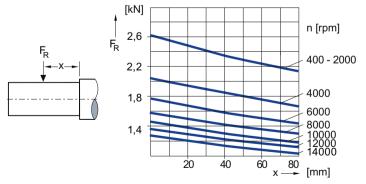


Figure 4-19 SH 100, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

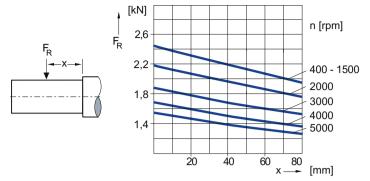


Figure 4-20 SH 100, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

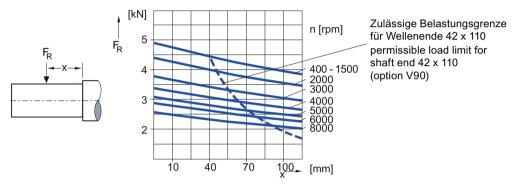
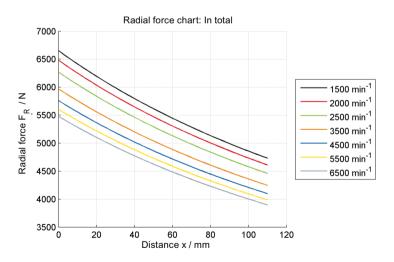
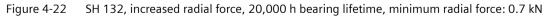


Figure 4-21 SH 132, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime





#### Note

#### Bearing with increased radial force

The roller bearings used here could sustain damage if they are operated under no load. Observe the specified minimum radial forces!

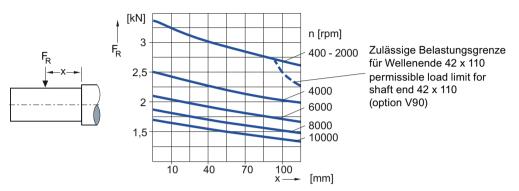


Figure 4-23 SH 132, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

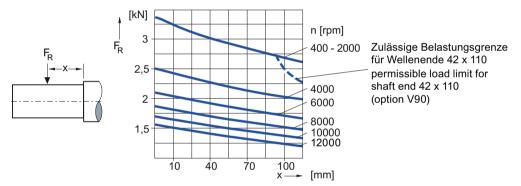


Figure 4-24 SH 132, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

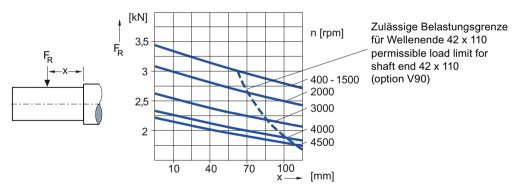


Figure 4-25 SH 132, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

## Permissible radial forces for SH 160

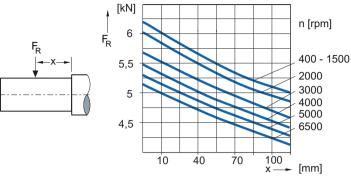


Figure 4-26 SH 160, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

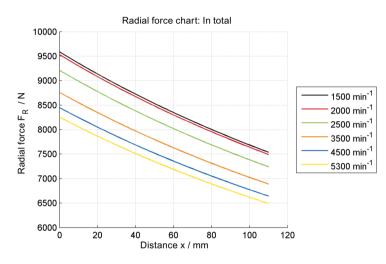


Figure 4-27 SH 160, increased radial force, 16,000 h bearing lifetime, minimum radial force: 1 kN

#### Note

## Bearing with increased radial force

The roller bearings used here could sustain damage if they are operated under no load.

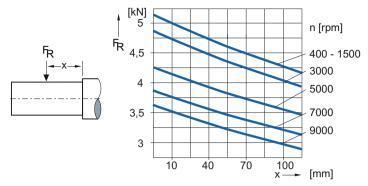


Figure 4-28 SH 160, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

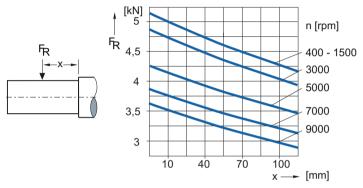


Figure 4-29 SH 160, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

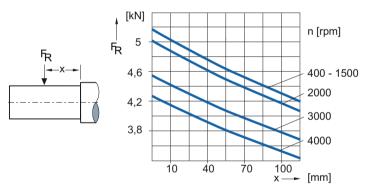
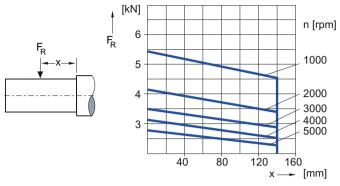


Figure 4-30 SH 160, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

## Permissible radial forces for SH 180





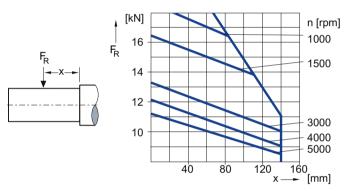


Figure 4-32 SH 180, increased radial force, 12,000 h bearing lifetime, minimum radial force: 4 kN

#### Note

#### Bearing with increased radial force

The roller bearings used here could sustain damage if they are operated under no load.

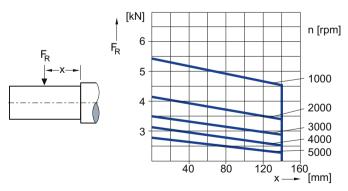
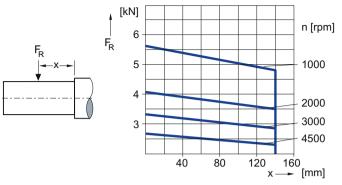
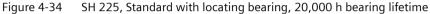
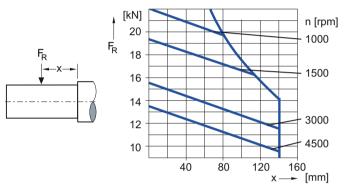


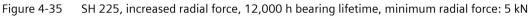
Figure 4-33 SH 180, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

## Permissible radial forces for SH 225









## Note

#### Bearing with increased radial force

The roller bearings used here could sustain damage if they are operated under no load.

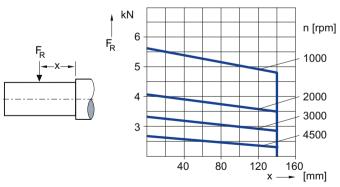


Figure 4-36 SH 225, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

## Permissible radial forces for SH 280

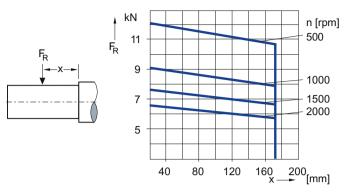


Figure 4-37 SH 280, Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

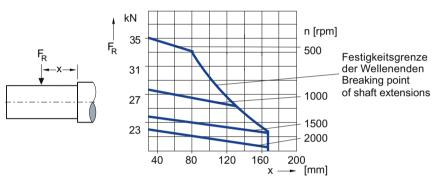


Figure 4-38 SH 280, increased radial force, 12,000 h bearing lifetime, minimum radial force: 9 kN

#### Note

#### Bearing with increased radial force

The roller bearings used here could sustain damage if they are operated under no load.

Observe the specified minimum radial forces!

#### **Axial forces**

Deep-groove ball bearings can absorb both radial as well as axial forces.

The maximum axial forces  $F_A$  as a function of the radial force are shown in the following force diagrams.

The permissible bearing forces are specified without taking into account the force due to spring-loaded bearings, the rotor weight for vertical mounting as well as the direction of the force.

#### Note

#### Determining the permissible axial forces

The permissible axial forces at the shaft extension  $F_{A perm}$  are dependent on the application (mounting, force direction) and must be calculated.

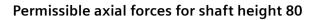
# Forces due to the rotor weight and spring-loading forces

Motor type	Force due to weight $F_L$ N	Force due to spring-loading F <sub>c</sub> +/- 25 % N
1PH8081	65	450
1PH8083	90	-
1PH8087	115	_
1PH8101	120	550
1PH8103	150	
1PH8105	195	_
1PH8107	220	_
1PH8131	270	900
1PH8133	330	
1PH8135	390	
1PH8137	445	
1PH8138		
1PH8163	600	1200
1PH8164		
1PH8165	715	
1PH8166		
1PH8167	655	
1PH8168		
1PH8184	900	880
1PH8184 (type of construction IM V5, V15)		2300
1PH8186	1150	880
1PH8186 (type of construction IM V5, V15)		2300
1PH8224	1710	880
1PH8226	2160	7
1PH8228	2570	7
1PH8284	3300	1100
1PH8286	4000	
1PH8288	4700	7

<b>T</b>				<b>6</b> .1
Table 4-24	Force due to	weight and	spring-loading	g of the rotor

## Note

For motors, shaft heights 80 to 160, the spring loading of the bearing F<sub>c</sub> can be increased by using option Q81. For description of option Q81, see Chapter "Motor components and options".



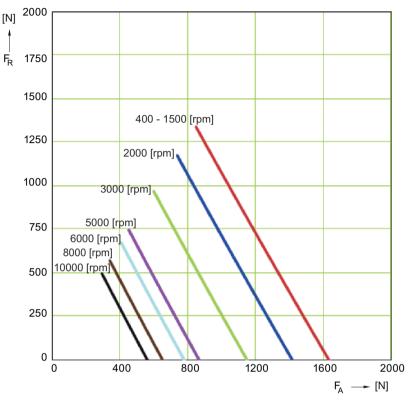


Figure 4-39 SH 80, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

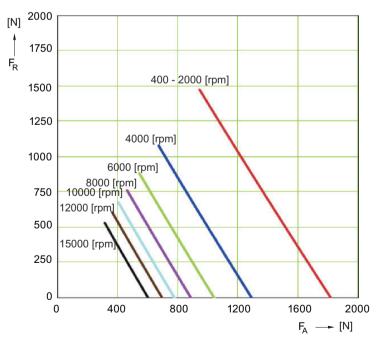


Figure 4-40 SH 80, Performance, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

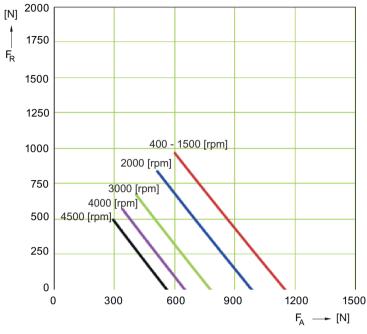


Figure 4-41 SH 80, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

## Permissible axial forces for shaft height 100

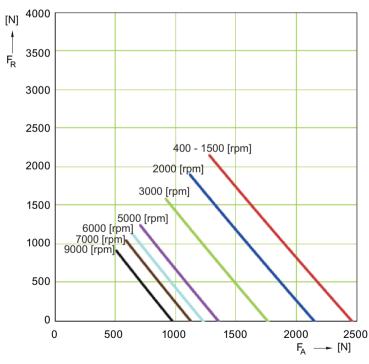


Figure 4-42 SH 100, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

Motor typ	e	Max. permissible axial force as a function of speed						
1PH810	Speed n r/min	1500	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000
	Axial force F <sub>A</sub> N	2100	2050	1950	1850	1750	1700	1650

Table 4-25	SH 100, increased radial force, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

#### Note

The permissible axial force is absorbed exclusively by the deep-groove ball bearing of the duplex bearing. The cylindrical roller bearing absorbs the radial force. The axial force  $F_{AZ}$  that is permissible during operation is calculated as stated in table "Calculating the permissible axial force (Page 113)."

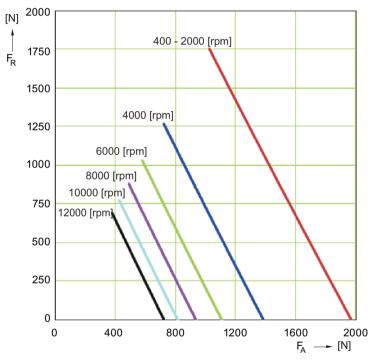


Figure 4-43 SH 100, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

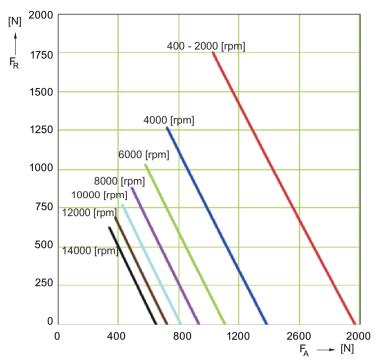


Figure 4-44 SH 100, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

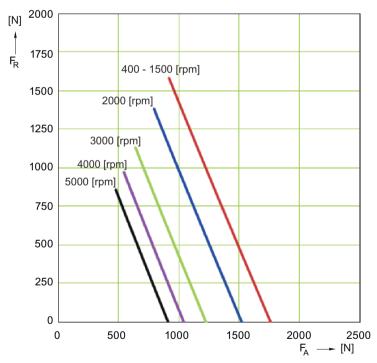


Figure 4-45 SH 100, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

## Permissible axial forces for SH 132

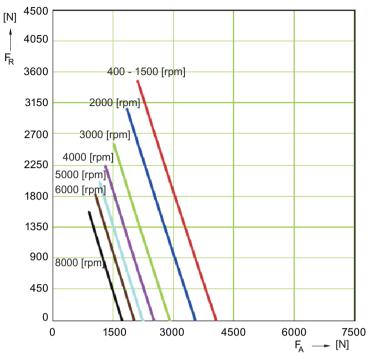


Figure 4-46 SH 132, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

Table 4-26 SH 132, increased radial force, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

Motor ty	ре	Max. permissible axial force as a function of speed						
1PH813	Speed n r/min	1500	2000	3000	4000	5000	6500	-
	Axial force F <sub>A</sub> N	2600	2550	2400	2250	2200	2100	-

#### Note

The permissible axial force is absorbed exclusively by the deep-groove ball bearing of the duplex bearing. The cylindrical roller bearing absorbs the radial force. The axial force  $F_{AZ}$  that is permissible during operation is calculated as stated in table "Calculating the permissible axial force (Page 113)."

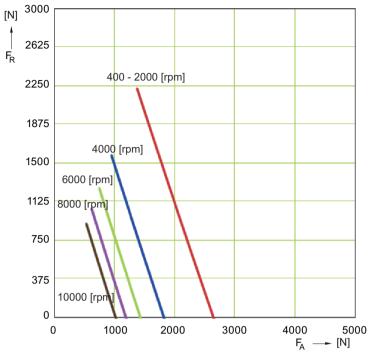


Figure 4-47 SH 132, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

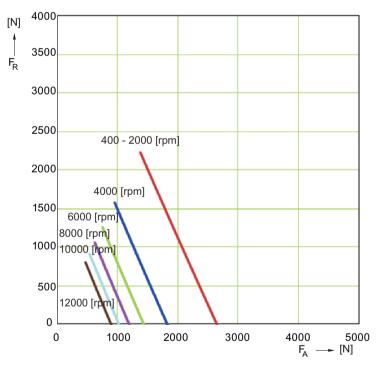


Figure 4-48 SH 132, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

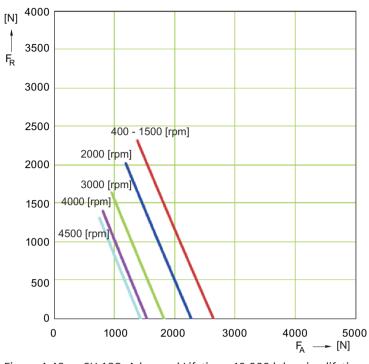


Figure 4-49 SH 132, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

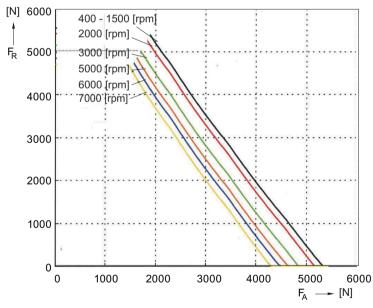


Figure 4-50 SH 160, Standard, and Standard with locating bearing, 20,000 h bearing lifetime

Motor ty	ре	Max. permissible axial force as a function of speed						
1PH816	Speed n r/min	1500	2000	3000	4000	5300	-	-
	Axial force F <sub>A</sub> N	4000	3800	3550	3400	3250	-	-

Table 4-27 SH 160, increased radial force, 16,000 h bearing lifetime

#### Note

The permissible axial force is absorbed exclusively by the deep-groove ball bearing of the duplex bearing. The cylindrical roller bearing absorbs the radial force. The axial force  $F_{AZ}$  that is permissible during operation is calculated as stated in table "Calculating the permissible axial force."

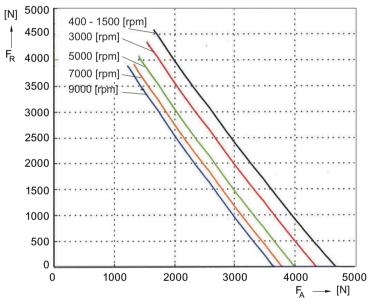


Figure 4-51 SH 160, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

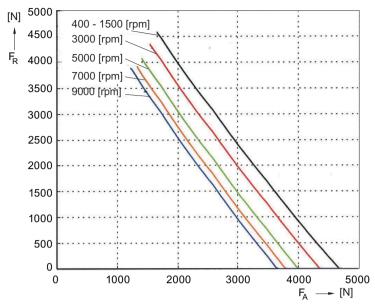


Figure 4-52 SH 160, High Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

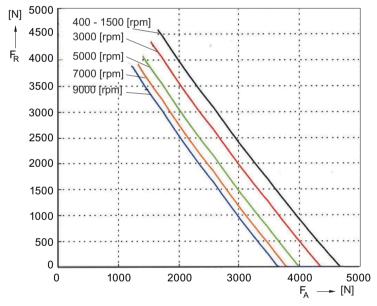


Figure 4-53 SH 160, Performance, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

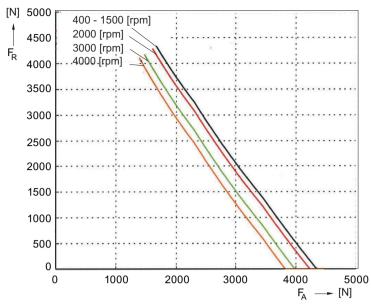


Figure 4-54 SH 160, Advanced Lifetime, 40,000 h bearing lifetime

See also

Axial force (Page 113)

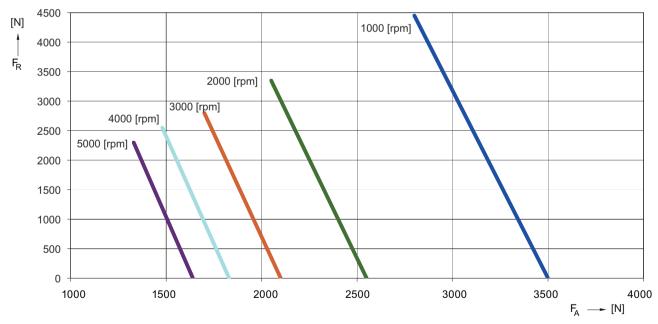


Figure 4-55 SH 180, Standard/Performance, 20,000/12,000 h bearing lifetime

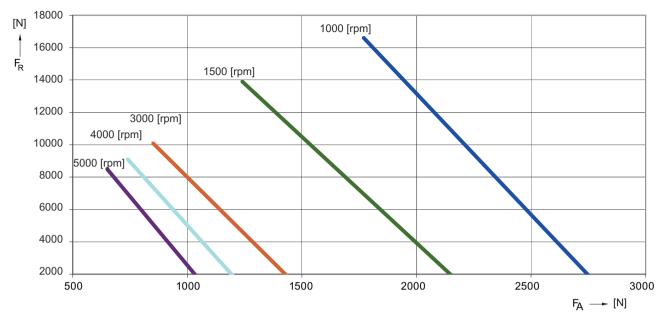


Figure 4-56 SH 180, increased cantilever forces, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

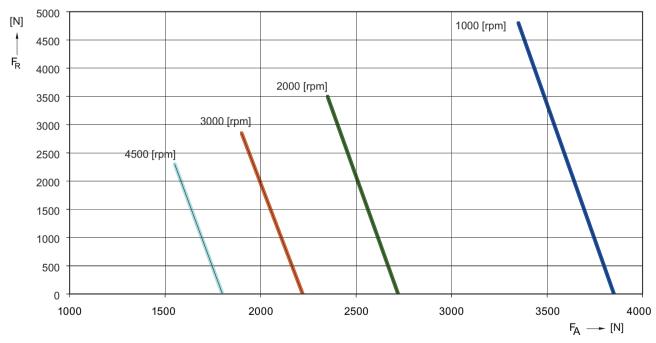


Figure 4-57 SH 225, Standard/Performance, 20,000/12,000 h bearing lifetime

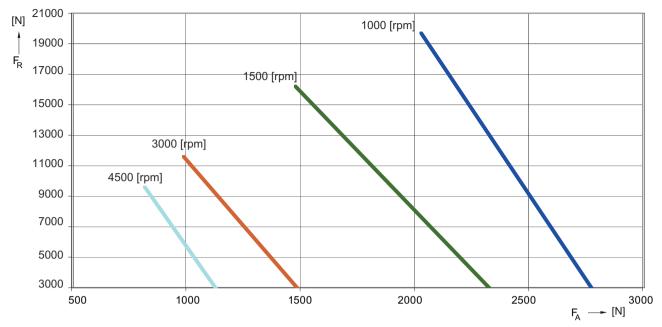


Figure 4-58 SH 225, increased cantilever forces, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

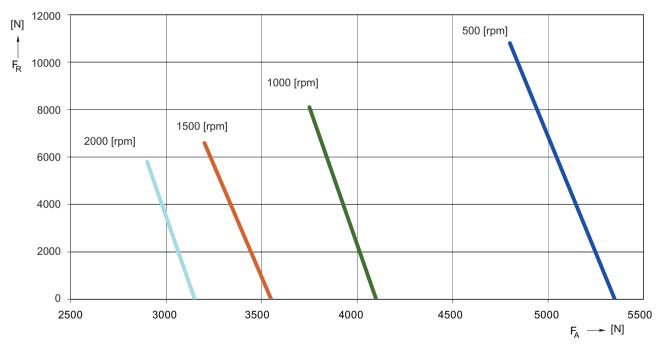


Figure 4-59 SH 280, Standard, 20000 h bearing lifetime

4.8 Radial eccentricity, concentricity and axial eccentricity

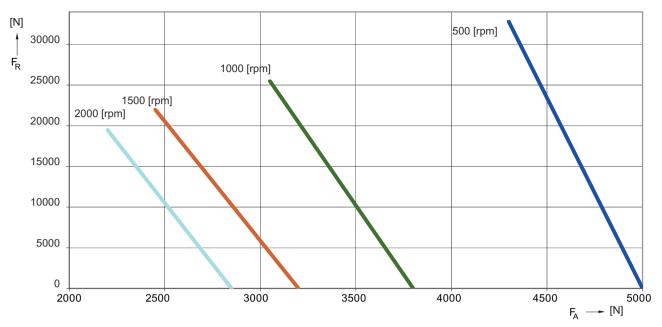


Figure 4-60 SH 280, increased cantilever forces, 12,000 h bearing lifetime

# 4.8 Radial eccentricity, concentricity and axial eccentricity

The shaft and flange accuracies are always checked in accordance with DIN 42955, IEC 60072. For shaft heights 180, 225 and 280, however, the flange accuracy is checked in accordance with DIN 50347. Data deviating from these values are indicated in the dimension drawings.

Shaft height	Tolerance level N	Tolerance level R	Tolerance SPECIAL
80	0.05	0.025	0.01
100	0.05	0.025	0.01
132	0.05	0.025	0.01
160	0.06	0.03	0.01
180	0.06	0.03	-
225	0.06	0.03	-
280	0.07	0.035	-

Table 4-28Radial eccentricity tolerance of the shaft to the frame axis (in relation to the cylindrical shaft extensions)

mm

4.8 Radial eccentricity, concentricity and axial eccentricity

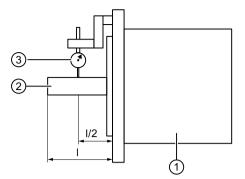


Figure 4-61 Checking the radial eccentricity

Table 4-29Concentricity and axial eccentricity tolerance of the flange surface to the shaft axis<br/>(referred to the centering diameter of the mounting flange)

Shaft height	Tolerance level N	Tolerance level R	Tolerance SPECIAL
80	0.1	0.05	0.03
100	0.1	0.05	0.04
132	0.125	0.063	0.04
160	0.125	0.063	0.04
180	0.125	0.063	-
225	0.125	0.063	-
280	0.16	0.08	-

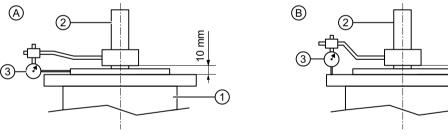


Figure 4-62 Checking the concentricity and axial eccentricity

#### Note

#### Acceptance test certificate

The runout, concentricity and axial eccentricity are tested in the Siemens factories as standard. For 1PH8 motors, an acceptance test certificate with the values actual measured can be ordered with option B36.

4.9 Balancing

# 4.9 Balancing

## 4.9.1 Requirements

# Requirements placed on the process when balancing mounted components - especially belt pulleys

In addition to the balance quality of the motor, the vibration quality of motors with mounted belt pulleys and coupling is essentially determined by the balance quality of the mounted component.

If the motor and mounted component are separately balanced before they are assembled, then the process used to balance the belt pulley or coupling must be adapted to the motor balancing type.

For asynchronous motors, a differentiation should be made between the following balancing types:

- Half-key balancing (an "H" is stamped on the shaft face)
- Full-key balancing (an "F" is stamped on the shaft face)
- Smooth shaft end (no keyway)

The balancing type is coded in the order designation.

#### Note

#### Machining the feather key

In the case of a half-key balanced shaft end and short output element, remove if necessary the part of the feather key which protrudes out of the output element and beyond the shaft contour. This is urgently recommended at speeds above 1000 r/min, and where the balance quality must comply with high demands.

For the highest demands placed on the system balance quality, we recommend that motors with smooth shaft (without keyway) are used. For motors balanced with full key, we recommend belt pulleys with two keyways on opposite sides, however, with only one key in the shaft end.

Balancing equipment/ Process step	Motor Half key balanced	Motor balanced with full key	Motor with plain shaft end	
Auxiliary shaft to balance the mounted component	<ul> <li>Auxiliary shaft with key- way</li> <li>Keyway with the same di- mensions as in the motor shaft end</li> <li>Auxiliary shaft half key balanced</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Auxiliary shaft with keyway</li> <li>Slot design with the exception of the slot width (as the motor) can be freely selected</li> <li>Auxiliary shaft full key balanced</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Auxiliary shaft without keyway</li> <li>If required, use a tapered auxiliary shaft</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Balance quality of the auxiliary shaft ≤ 10 % of the required balance quality of t nent to be mounted to the motor</li> </ul>			
Attaching the mounted com- ponent to the auxiliary shaft for bal- ancing	<ul> <li>Attached using a key</li> <li>Key design, dimensions and materials the same as at the motor shaft end</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Attached using a key</li> <li>Key design, dimensions and material the same as used for the full key bal- ancing of the auxiliary shaft</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Attach the component as far as possible without any play, e.g. using a light press fit on the tapered shaft</li> </ul>	
Position the mounted compo- nent on the auxiliary shaft	<ul> <li>Select a position between the mounted component and the key of the auxili- ary shaft so that it is the same when mounted on the actual motor</li> </ul>	No special requirements		
Balance the mounted compo- nent	Two-plane balancing is recommended - i.e. balancing in two planes at both sides of the mounted components at right angles to the axis of rotation			

 Table 4-30
 Requirements placed on the balancing process as a function of the motor balancing type

## **Special requirements**

If special requirements are placed on the smooth running operation of the machine, we recommend that the motor together with the output components is completely balanced. In this case, balancing should be carried out in two planes of the output component.

## 4.9.2 Balancing 1PH8 motors with "Premium Performance" bearing version

The on-site mechanical system vibration characteristics depend on factors such as the output elements, mounting situation, alignment, installation, and external vibration and can increase the level of motor vibration. Under certain circumstances, the rotor may have to be balanced completely with the output element.

1PH8 motors are supplied with "special" vibration severity. Mounting a coupling element on the shaft extension changes the rotor balancing state. As a consequence, after mounting coupling elements, the rotor must be completely balanced. The following description shows, using an example, the procedure for 1PH8 motors with "Premium Performance" bearing version. You must determine the vibration severity and the position of the imbalance by making the appropriate measurements. You can then remove the imbalance. 4.9 Balancing

## Measuring unit required

2-channel vibration measuring unit

Frequency bandwidth: 10 Hz to 1000 Hz

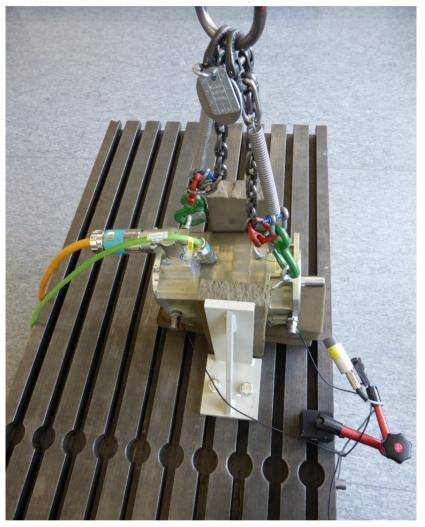
The measuring unit must be equipped with a function to analyze orders of frequency components. Using this function, you can display the imbalance (1st order vibration component).

### **Typical approach**



1. Prepare to make the reference measurement. Freely suspend the motor according to IEC 60034-14.

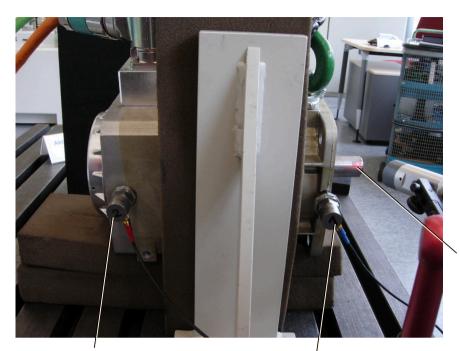
The natural frequency of the motor-spring system must be less than 3 Hz. As a consequence, use springs that are adapted to the motor mass. The motor must be freely suspended so that the reference measurement can provide a correct measurement result.



2. Make a reference mark on the shaft (DE) for the speed and angle detection.

### Mechanical properties

4.9 Balancing

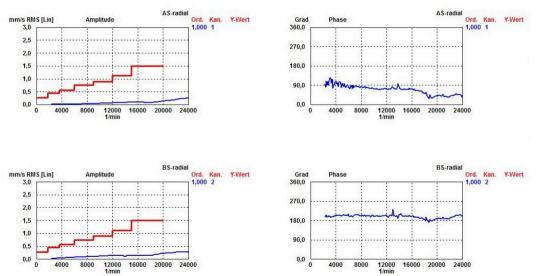


Reference mark for the speed and angle detection

Sensor 2: DE Ch2

Sensor 1: DE Ch1

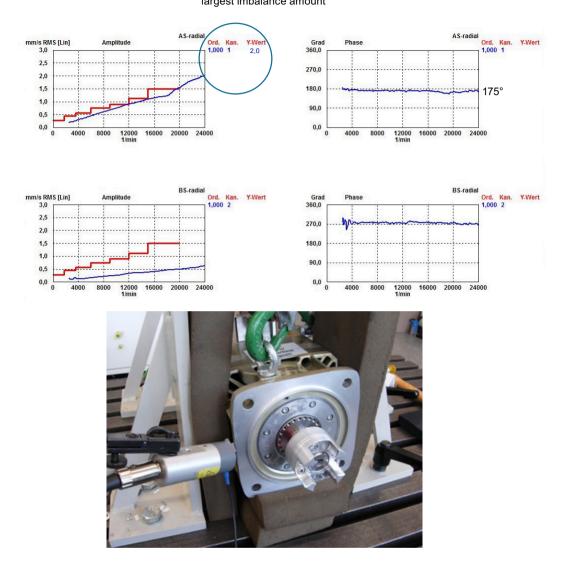
- 3. Position the measuring sensors: Sensor 1 for the DE, sensor 2 for the NDE.
- 4. Perform the reference measurement on the freely suspended motor for the DE and the NDE. Measure the absolute value and angular position of the imbalance (1st order).



5. Attach the coupling to the shaft extension (DE).

4.9 Balancing

 Perform the measurement on the coupled motor for the DE and the NDE. Also in this case, measure the absolute value and angular position of the imbalance (1st order).
 largest imbalance amount



#### 4.10 Vibration response

7. Remove the imbalance. To do this, screw one or several balancing screws into the rotor. Start at the side with the highest absolute imbalance. For instance, if you detect an imbalance at the DE at an angle of  $175^{\circ}$ , then you must screw in a balancing screw on the opposite side at an angle of  $355^{\circ}$  ( $175^{\circ} + 180^{\circ} = 355^{\circ}$ ).



Insert balancing screw at the DE



Insert balancing screw at the NDE

8. It may be necessary to repeat Point 6 and Point 7 several times until the imbalance has been completely removed.

## 4.10 Vibration response

### 4.10.1 Mounting and mounting instructions

In order to ensure smooth, vibration-free motor operation, a stable foundation design is required, the motor must be precisely aligned, and the components that are to be mounted on the shaft extension must be correctly balanced.

The following mounting instructions must be carefully observed:

- For high-speed machines, we recommend that the complete unit is dynamically balanced after couplings or belt pulleys have been mounted.
- Use suitable equipment when mounting drive elements. Use the thread at the shaft extension.
- Do not apply any shocks or axial pressure to the shaft extension.
- Especially for high-speed motors with flange mounting, it is important that the mounting is stiff in order to locate any natural frequency as high as possible so that it remains above the maximum rotational frequency.

- Thin sheets (shims) can be placed under the motor mounting feet to align the motor and to avoid mechanically stressing the motor. The number of shims used should be kept to a minimum.
- In order to securely mount the motors and reliably and safely transfer the drive torque, bolts with strength class 8.8 according to ISO 898-1 should be used.

#### Note

#### Comply with permissible vibration values

All flange-mounted motors must have a stable motor suspension assembly and for high field weakening speeds must be supported using the appropriate feet at the bearing end shield (foot/flange type of construction, also refer to Section "Vibration severity limit values").

Support using feet at the bearing end shield is not required if the following conditions are maintained:

- For flange-mounted motors, there is a stable motor suspension design
- The permissible vibration values according to DIN ISO 10816 are maintained
- The maximum speed is limited (refer to Table "Restricting the maximum speed")

Motors that are mounted, as a result of their type of construction, to the wall using the motor feet, must be fixed in place using an adequately dimensioned positive form fit (e.g. using studs or mounting rails).

When commissioning the motors, it must be ensured that the permissible vibration values according to DIN ISO 10816 are maintained.

Shaft height	Max. permissible speed
mm	r/min
180	3000
225	2500
280	2000

#### Table 4-31 Limiting the maximum speed

Table 4-32Flange mounting with threaded studs and nuts

Shaft height	M1	
mm	mm	
180	32	
225	45	
280	45	Motor M1

#### 4.10 Vibration response

#### Note

#### Flange mounting SH 180 to SH 280

For SH 180 to SH 280, flange mounting is only possible using studs and nuts. Clearance M1 for threading the nut between the motor flange and motor frame according to DIN 42948.

#### NOTICE

#### Check the bearing

If liquid accumulates at the flange because of vertical or horizontal mounting, the bearing and the bearing grease may be adversely affected.

• Prevent liquid from collecting at the flange.

#### Note

#### Attaching plastic covers for SH 80 up to SH 160

• With the forced-ventilated versions of shaft heights 80 to 160, before the motor is commissioned you must replace the plastic covers that were removed so that the mounting bolts could be tightened.

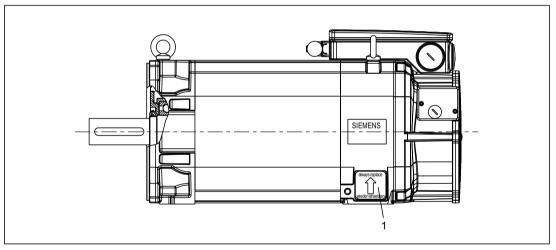


Figure 4-63 Cover for mounting foot

#### Note

#### Mounting air-cooled motors

• Air-cooled motors must be mounted in such a way that the cooling air can enter and be discharged without any obstruction (see also Chapter "Cooling").

#### 4.10.2 Natural frequency when mounted

The motor is a system which is capable of vibration at its natural frequency. For all motors, this natural frequency lies above the specified maximum speed.

When the motor is mounted onto a machine, a new system, which is capable of vibration, is created with modified natural frequencies. These can lie within the motor speed range.

This can result in undesirable vibrations in the mechanical drive transmission.

#### Note

#### Avoiding natural frequencies when mounting

Motors must be carefully mounted on adequately stiff foundations or bedplates. Additional elasticities of the foundation/bedplates can result in resonance effects of the natural frequency at the operating speed and therefore result in inadmissibly high vibration values.

The magnitude of the natural frequency when the motor is mounted depends on various factors and can be influenced by the following points:

- Mechanical transmission elements (gearboxes, belts, couplings, pinions, etc.)
- Stiffness of the machine design to which the motor is mounted
- Stiffness of the motor in the area around the foot or customer flange
- Motor weight
- Machine weight and the weight of the mechanical system in the vicinity of the motor
- Damping properties of the motor and the driven machine
- Mounting type, mounting position (IM B5, IM B3, IM B35, IM V1, etc.)
- Motor weight distribution, i.e. length, shaft height

### 4.10.3 Misalignment

To avoid or minimize misalignment, a compensating coupling should be used (see the diagram).

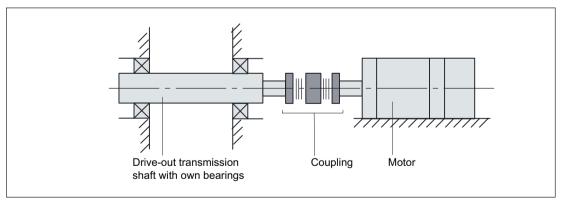


Figure 4-64 Mechanical output transmission shaft with its own bearings and compensating coupling

If possible, the motor should not be directly and rigidly coupled to an output transmission shaft which has its own bearings.

#### 4.10 Vibration response

However, if a rigid coupling is absolutely necessary for mechanical design reasons, misalignment deviations must be avoided. In this case, a careful check must be made by making the appropriate measurements.

#### Vertical and horizontal alignment

The following measures are required to compensate for any radial offset at the coupling and to horizontally adjust the electric motor with respect to the driven load:

- Place shims under the motor feet to position it vertically and to prevent stress in the machine. The number of shims should be kept as low as possible, so use as few thicker shims as possible instead of several thinner shims.
- For horizontal positioning, push the motor sideways on the foundation Pay attention to maintaining the axial position.
- When positioning the motor, ensure that a uniform axial gap is maintained around the coupling. Note on alignment accuracy: Remember to take account of data concerning the alignment accuracy of the driven load and the coupling.

#### Alignment accuracy

- 1. Align the motors with coupling output in such a manner that the center lines of the shafts are parallel with no offset. This ensures that no additional forces affect their bearings during operation.
- 2. Perform the fine adjustments with shims under the entire motor foot.

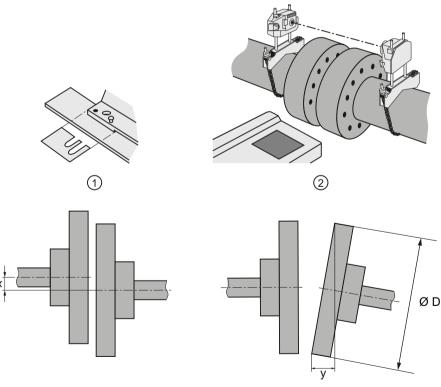


Figure 4-65 Aligning the drive

Table 4.55 Termissible deviations when aligning the motor				
Permissible deviations	Radial shaft offset	Axial shaft offset		
	x	У		
Flexible coupling	0.05 mm	0.05 mm		

#### Table 4-33 Permissible deviations when aligning the motor

### 4.10.4 Flywheels

Flywheels with a high mass, which are rigidly mounted to the end of the motor shaft, modify the vibration characteristics of the motor and shift the critical rotational frequencies of the motor into the lower speed ranges.

The overall system should be precision balanced in order to minimize/avoid exciting vibration, when external masses are directly mounted onto the motor shaft.

Operation in the resonance range must be avoided.

### 4.10.5 Vibration stressing

The on-site system vibration behavior depends on factors such as the output elements, mounting situation, alignment, installation, and external vibration and can increase the level of vibration on the motor.

Under certain circumstances, the rotor may have to be completely balanced with the output element.

To ensure problem-free operation and a long service life, the vibration values according to ISO 10816 must not be exceeded at the defined measuring points on the motor.

Vibration frequency	Vibration values
< 6.3 Hz	Vibration amplitude s $\leq$ 0.16 mm
6.3 250 Hz	Vibration velocity $v_{rms} \le 4.5 \text{ mm/s}$
> 250 Hz	Vibration acceleration $a \le 10 \text{ m/s}^2$

Table 4-34 Maximum permissible radial vibration values for SH 80 to 160<sup>1)</sup>

Table 4-35 Maximum permissible radial vibration values for SH 180 to 280<sup>1)</sup>

Vibration frequency	Vibration values
< 6.3 Hz	Vibration amplitude s $\leq$ 0.25 mm
6.3 63 Hz	Vibration velocity $v_{rms} \le 7.1 \text{ mm/s}$
> 63 Hz	Vibration acceleration a $\leq 4.0 \text{ m/s}^2$

4.10 Vibration response

 Table 4-36
 Maximum permissible axial vibration values for SH 80 to 160<sup>1)</sup>

Vibration velocity	Vibration acceleration
$v_{rms} = 4.5 \text{ mm/s}$	$a_{peak} = 2.25 \text{ m/s}^2$

#### 1) Both values must be maintained simultaneously

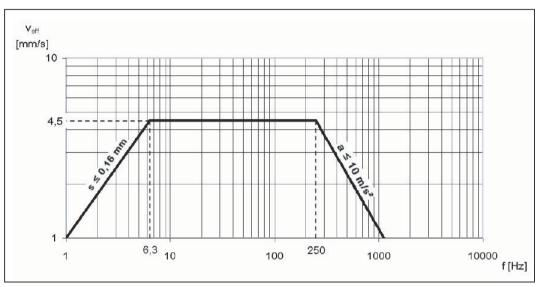


Figure 4-66 Maximum permissible vibration velocity including vibration amplitude and vibration acceleration for SH 80 to 160

Table 4-37	Maximum	permissible	axial vibratio	n values for	SH 180 to 2801)
------------	---------	-------------	----------------	--------------	-----------------

Vibration velocity	Vibration acceleration
$v_{rms} = 7.1 \text{ mm/s}$	$a_{peak} = 3.55 \text{ m/s}^2$

1) Both values must be maintained simultaneously

#### 4.10 Vibration response

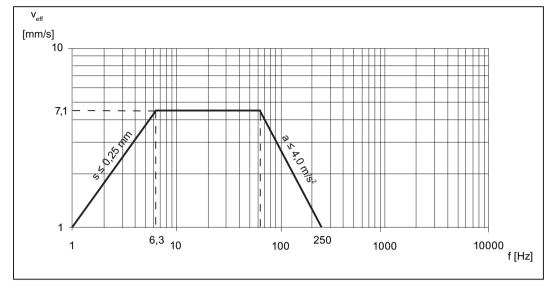


Figure 4-67 Maximum permissible vibration velocity including vibration amplitude and vibration acceleration for SH 180 to 280

To measure the vibration velocity, the measuring equipment must fulfill the requirements of ISO 2954. The vibration acceleration must be measured as a peak value in the time range in a frequency band of 10 to 2000 Hz.

If appreciable vibration excitation in excess of 2000 Hz (e.g. gear teeth meshing frequencies) can be expected, the measurement range must be adapted accordingly. This does not alter the maximum permissible values.

#### Note

#### Avoiding continuous operation at natural frequencies

Uninterrupted duty in the natural frequencies of the installed/mounted system should be avoided, as this generally leads to the permissible vibration values being exceeded and the system being damaged. To reduce vibration, flanged-mounted motors can be supported at the NDE.

#### Note

#### Measuring vibration values according to the standard

Vibration must be analyzed and measured (measuring points, etc.) according to standard ISO 10816-3.

#### Note

#### Increased resistance to vibration

1PH8 motors with shaft heights 180 and 225 and with the option L03 can be used in compliance with certain operating conditions for applications with increased resistance to vibration (see Chapter "Increased resistance to vibration (Page 178)"). Possible applications are, for example, applications such as servo presses.

4.11 Vibration severity grade

### 4.11 Vibration severity grade

The 1PH8 motors conform to vibration severity level A in accordance with EN 60034-14 (IEC 600-34-14). The values indicated refer only to the motor. The system vibration response depends on the conditions at the installation location and can result in higher vibration values at the motor.

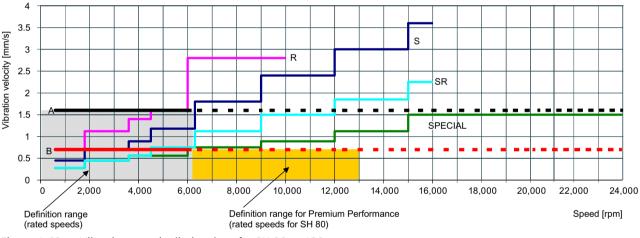
#### Note

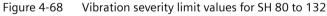
#### Vibration severity limit values

According to the vibration severity limit value diagrams below, the motors operate within the limit values stipulated for versions R, S, SR or SPECIAL over the specified speed range. Furthermore, within the rated speed range, they correspond to vibration severity grades A or B as defined by EN 60034-14 (IEC 600-34-14).

The balance quality depending on the bearing is encoded in the Article No., see Chapter "Selection and ordering data."

As a general rule, high radial force load capacity is not compatible with high speed and high vibration quality. The reason for this is that the different applications require different bearings.





4.12 Noise emission

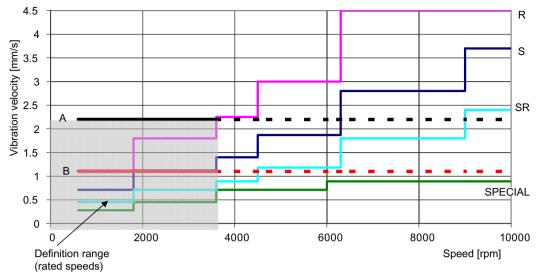


Figure 4-69 Vibration severity limit values for SH 160 to 280

#### Note

#### Acceptance test certificate

Compliance with the limits, depending on the vibration severity grade ordered, is ensured in the Siemens factories as standard. For 1PH8 motors, an acceptance test certificate with the vibration velocities actually measured can be ordered with option B35.

### 4.12 Noise emission

The noise emissions of the 1PH8 depend on the type of cooling and are therefore described in Chapter "Cooling (Page 67)."

### Mechanical properties

4.12 Noise emission

# Motor components and options

### 5.1 Motor components

### 5.1.1 Thermal motor protection

A Pt1000 temperature sensor is integrated in the stator winding to monitor the winding temperature. The exact type of temperature sensor is stated on the nameplate.

Table 5-1 Features and technical data	5-1 F	eatures and	technical	data
---------------------------------------	-------	-------------	-----------	------

Туре	Pt1000
Resistance when cold (20 °C)	Approx. 1090 Ω
Resistance when hot (100 °C)	Approx. 1390 Ω
Connection	Via signal cable
Response temperature <sup>1)</sup>	Prewarning < 150 °C Alarm/trip at max. 170 °C ±5 °C

<sup>1)</sup> With SH80: Prewarning < 130 °C; Alarm/trip at max. 150 °C  $\pm$ 5 °C

The resistance change is proportional to the winding temperature change. The temperature characteristic is taken into account in the closed-loop control.

The prewarning signal from the evaluation circuit in the SINAMICS drive converter can be externally evaluated.

High short-term overload conditions require additional protective measures as a result of the thermal coupling time of the temperature sensor.

The conductors for the temperature sensor are routed in one cable together with the encoder conductors.

#### NOTICE

Destruction of the temperature sensor if the insulation resistance is tested improperly.

If the test voltage is connected to only one temperature sensor terminal, the temperature sensor will be destroyed.

• Short-circuit the ends of the temperature sensor cables before applying the test voltage.

#### NOTICE

#### Destruction of the motor for a thermally critical load

There is no adequate protection during a thermally critical load, e.g. a high overload at motor standstill.

- Take additional protective measures, e.g. an overcurrent relay.
- The "thermal motor model i2t monitoring" function must be activated in the converter.

#### Note

#### Connector for temperature sensors

The temperature sensor is connected to the signal connector together with the speed encoder signal.

1PH8 motors without an encoder can only be ordered as induction motors. In this case, the temperature sensor is connected to the signal terminal strip in the terminal box. An additional M16 x 1.5 cable entry is provided in the terminal box to establish a connection. For encoderless 1PH8 motors connected using a connector, the temperature sensor is connected to the encoder connector (connector version and assignment the same as for HTL encoders).

The spare temperature sensor (option A25 for shaft heights 80 to 160) and the circuit of PTC thermistors for alarm/trip (option A12) are connected to a signal terminal block in the terminal box.

### 5.1.2 Encoder

#### 5.1.2.1 Encoder overview

The encoder is encrypted at the 9th position of the motor Article number using the appropriate letters.

#### Note

#### Different encoder types for motors with or without DRIVE-CLiQ

The identification letters at the 9th position of the Article No. for the encoder type required is different for motors with and without DRIVE-CLiQ.

Encoder type	9th position of the Arti- cle No.
Without encoder	A
Absolute encoder EnDat 2048 S/R (encoder AM2048S/R)	E
Incremental encoder HTL 1024 S/R (encoder HTL 1024 S/R)	Н
Incremental encoder HTL 2048 S/R (encoder HTL 2048 S/R)	J

#### Table 5-2 Encoder types for motors without DRIVE-CLiQ

Encoder type	9th position of the Arti- cle No.
Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 2048 S/R with C and D tracks	М
(encoder IC 2048 S/R)	
Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 512 S/R without C and D tracks	Т
(encoder IN 512 S/R)	
Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp 256 S/R without C and D tracks	С
(encoder IN 256 S/R)	

#### Table 5-3 Encoder types for motors with DRIVE-CLiQ

Encoder type	9th position of the Arti- cle No.
Absolute encoder, 22-bit singleturn + 12-bit multiturn (encoder AM22DQ)	F
Incremental encoder, 22-bit, with commutation position (encoder IC22DQ)	D
Incremental encoder 20-bit without commutation position (encoder N20DQ)	U
Incremental encoder 19-bit without commutation position (encoder IN19DQ)	S
External encoder (only possible for shaft height 280 and forced ventilation)	
Incremental encoder HTL 1024 S/R HOG 22 (Baumer-Hübner)	G
Mounting prepared (additional Z options must be considered)	
Incremental encoder HTL 1024 pulses/revolution POG 10 (Baumer-Hübner)	К
Mounting prepared (additional Z options must be considered)	

### 5.1.2.2 Encoder connection for motors with a DRIVE-CLiQ interface

#### 

#### Danger to life when using an incorrect encoder module

The DRIVE-CLiQ encoder contains motor and encoder-specific data and an electronic type plate. If you use an incorrect DRIVE-CLiQ encoder, this can result in death, severe injury and severe material damage.

- Only use the DRIVE-CLiQ encoder and the electronic type plate for the original motor.
- Do not mount the DRIVE-CLiQ encoder onto other motors.
- Do not replace a DRIVE-CLiQ encoder by a DRIVE-CLiQ encoder belonging to another motor.
- Only appropriately trained Siemens service personnel should replace DRIVE-CLiQ encoders.

#### NOTICE

#### Electrostatic discharge

Electronic modules contain components that can be destroyed by electrostatic discharge. These modules can be easily destroyed if they are not handled properly.

• To protect your equipment against damage, follow the instructions given in the chapter ESD Guidelines.

Motors with DRIVE-CLiQ interface have an internal Sensor Module. This Sensor Module includes an electronic rating plate. This simplifies commissioning for the SINAMICS S110 / S120 drive system, since all the motor parameters are set automatically.

### 5.1.2.3 Encoder connection for motors without DRIVE-CLiQ (12/17-pole)

Motors without DRIVE-CLiQ are connected using the 12 or 17-pin flange socket by default.

#### See also

Incremental encoder HTL 1024 S/R or HTL 2048 S/R (Page 163)

#### 5.1.2.4 Encoder assignment as a function of maximum permissible speeds

The following tables show the possible assignments of encoders to the 1PH8 motor series as a function of maximum permissible speeds.

Encoder type		Without encoder	AM2048 S/R	HTL1024 S/R	HTL2048 S/R	IC2048 S/R	IN512 S/R	IN256 S/R
9th data position		A	E	н	J	М	Т	С
Permissible n <sub>max</sub> speeds (encoder) in r/min		-	12,000	9000	4600	12,000	15,000	24,000
Motor version and bearing system	n <sub>max</sub> (motor) r/min							
1PH8080-1000- 0002	10,000	✓	-	<b>√</b> <sup>2)</sup>	✓ <sup>4)</sup>	1	-	-
1PH8080-1000- 0L02	15,000	1	-	-	-	✓ <sup>3)</sup>	1	•
1PH8080-1000- 0M02	20,000	•	-	-	-	✓ <sup>3)</sup>	✓ <sup>5)</sup>	•
1PH8080-1000- 0N02	24,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	•
1PH8080-1000- 0Q02	5000	•	•	•	✓ <sup>4)</sup>	1	-	-

Table 5-4 Encoder types for motors without DRIVE-CLiQ

Encoder type		Without encoder	AM2048 S/R	HTL1024 S/R	HTL2048 S/R	IC2048 S/R	IN512 S/R	IN256 S/R
9th data position Permissible		A -	E 12,000	H 9000	J 4600	M 12,000	T 15,000	C 24,000
n <sub>max</sub> speeds (encoder) in r/min								
Motor version and bearing system	n <sub>max</sub> (motor) r/min							
1PH8100-1000- 0002	9000	✓	-	-	✓ <sup>4)</sup>	1	-	-
1PH8100-1000- 0L02	12,000	•	1	-	-	1	1	1
1PH8100-1000- 0M02	18,000	1	-	-	-	✓ <sup>3)</sup>	✓ <sup>5)</sup>	1
1PH8100-1000- 0Q02	5000	•	1	1	✓ <sup>4)</sup>	1	-	-
1PH8130-1000- 0002	8000	1	1	1	✓ <sup>4)</sup>	1	-	-
1PH8130-1000- 0L02	10,000	1	1	-	-	1	1	1
1PH8130-1000- 0M02	15,000	1	-	-	-	✓ <sup>3)</sup>	1	1
1PH8130-1000- 0Q02	4500	1	1	1	1	1	-	-
1PH8130-2000- 0002	4500	-	1	-	-	1	-	-
1PH8130-50000- 0002	6500	1	1	1	1	1	-	-
1PH8130-70000- 0002	6500	1	1	1	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-1000- 0002	6500	1	1	1	✓ <sup>4)</sup>	1	-	-
1PH8160-1000- 0L02	9000	1	1	1	-	1	1	1
1PH8160-1000- 0M02	10,000	1	-	-	-	1	1	1
1PH816□-1□□□□- □Q□2	4000	1	1	1	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-20000- 0002	4000	-	1	-	-	1	-	-
1PH8160-50000- 0002	5000	~	1	1	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-70000- 0002	5000	1	-	1	1	1	-	-
1PH8180-1000- 0002	5000	~	1	1	✓ <sup>4)</sup>	1	-	-
1PH8180-1000- 0L02	7500	1	-	1	-	1	-	-

Encoder type		Without encoder	AM2048 S/R	HTL1024 S/R	HTL2048 S/R	IC2048 S/R	IN512 S/R	IN256 S/R
9th data position		A	E	н	J	М	Т	С
Permissible n <sub>max</sub> speeds (encoder) in r/min		-	12,000	9000	4600	12,000	15,000	24,000
Motor version and bearing system	n <sub>max</sub> (motor) r/min							
1PH8180-2000- 0002	3800	-	•	-	-	1	-	-
1PH8220-10000- 0002	4500	•	•	•	•	1	-	-
1PH8220-1000- 0L02	6000	•	•	•	-	1	-	-
1PH8220-2000- 0002	3500	-	•	-	-	1	-	-
1PH8280-1000- 0002	3300	•	•	•	•	1	-	-

✓ Assignment possible

2) Motor/encoder assignment limited to 9000 r/min

3) Motor/encoder assignment limited to 12,000 r/min

4) Motor/encoder assignment limited to 4600 r/min

5) Motor/encoder assignment limited to 15,000 r/min

Encoder type		AM22DQ	IC22DQ	IN20DQ	IN19DQ	
9th data position		F	D	U	S	
Permissible n <sub>max</sub> speeds (encoder) in	n r/min	12,000	12,000	15,000	24,000	
Motor version and bearing system	n <sub>max</sub> (motor) r/min					
1PH8080-1000-0001	10,000	✓	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	-	-	
1PH8080-1000-0L01	15,000	-	<b>√</b> <sup>3)</sup>	1	1	
1PH8080-1000-0M01	20,000	-	<b>√</b> <sup>3)</sup>	<b>√</b> <sup>5)</sup>	1	
1PH8080-1000-0N01	24,000	-	-	-	1	
1PH8080-1000-0Q01	5000	1	1	-	-	
1PH81011	9000	✓	1	-	-	
1PH8100-1000-0L01	12,000	✓	1	1	1	
1PH8100-1000-0M01	18,000	-	✓ <sup>3)</sup>	<b>√</b> <sup>5)</sup>	1	
1PH8101Q_1	5000	✓	1	-	-	
1PH8130-1000-0001	8000	✓	✓	-	-	
1PH8130-1000-0L01	10,000	✓	1	✓	✓	
1PH8130-1000-0M01	15,000	-	<b>√</b> <sup>3)</sup>	1	1	
1PH8130-1000-0Q01	4500	1	1	-	-	

Table 5-5 Encoder types for motors with DRIVE-CLiQ

Encoder type		AM22DQ	IC22DQ	IN20DQ	IN19DQ
9th data position		F	D	U	S
Permissible n <sub>max</sub> speeds (encoder) in	n r/min	12,000	12,000	15,000	24,000
Motor version and bearing system	n <sub>max</sub> (motor) r/min				
1PH8130-2000-0001	4500	1	1	-	-
1PH8130-50000-0001	6500	1	1	-	-
1PH8130-7000-0001	6500	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-1000-0001	6500	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-1000-0L01	9000	✓	1		✓
1PH8160-1000-0M01	10,000	-	1	1	1
1PH8160-1000-0Q01	4000	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-2000-0001	4000	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-50000-0001	5000	1	1	-	-
1PH8160-70000-0001	5000	1	1	-	-
1PH8180-1000-0001	5000	✓	1	-	-
1PH8180-1000-0L01	7500	1	1	-	-
1PH8180-2000-0001	3800	✓	✓	-	-
1PH8220-1000-0001	4500	1	1	-	-
1PH8220-1000-0L01	6000	1	1	-	-
1PH8220-2000-0001	3500	1	1	-	-
1PH8280-1000-0001	3300	1	1	-	-

✓ Assignment possible

3) Motor/encoder assignment limited to 12,000 r/min

5) Motor/encoder assignment limited to 15,000 r/min

#### 5.1.2.5 Incremental encoder HTL 1024 S/R or HTL 2048 S/R

#### Function

- Speed actual value sensing
- Indirect incremental measuring system for the position control loop
- One zero pulse (reference mark) per revolution

Table 5-6	Properties and technical data
Table 3-0	FIOPEILIES and lechnical data

Properties	Incremental encoder HTL
Coupling at the NDE	• with SH 80 to 225: Integrated in the motor
	• with SH 280: Built on to the motor
Operating voltage	+10 +30 V
Current consumption	max. 150 mA
Incremental resolution (periods per revolution)	1024 S/R or 2048 S/R

Properties	Incremental encoder HTL
Incremental signals	HTL Track A, track B, Zero pulse and inverted signals
Angular error	±1'
Maximum permissible speeds	• With 1024 S/R: 9000 r/min
	• With 2048 S/R: 4600 r/min

### Connection

 Table 5-7
 Connection assignment, 12-pin flange-mounted socket

PIN No.	Signal	
1	В*	
2	+1R1	
3	R	
4	R*	
5	A	
6	A*	
7	CTRL TACH	
8	В	
9	not connected	40 05
10	M encoder	
11	-1R2	When viewing the plug-in side (pins)
12	P encoder	

### Cables

Mating connector: 6FX2003-0SU12

Table 5-8Pre-fabricated cable for SINAMICS:

6FX	□ 002 - 2AH00 -	0	
	$\downarrow$	$\downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow$	
	$\downarrow$	Length	
	5 MOTION-CON- NECT®500	Max. cable lengths: without transfer of inverted signals,150 m	
	8 MOTION-CON- NECT®800	with transfer of inverted signals, 300 m	

For other technical data and length code, refer to catalog, Chapter "MOTION-CONNECT connection system"

### 5.1.2.6 Incremental encoders IC 2048 S/R, IN 512 S/R and IN 256 S/R

### Function

- Angular measuring system for the commutation
- Speed actual value sensing
- Indirect incremental measuring system for the position control loop
- One zero pulse (reference mark) per revolution

Properties	Incremental encoder sin/cos 1Vpp
Coupling at the NDE	• with SH 80 to 225: Integrated in the motor
	• with SH 280: Built on to the motor
Operating voltage	+5 V ±5 %
Current consumption	max. 150 mA
Incremental resolution	• 2048 S/R
(periods per revolution)	• 512 S/R
	• 256 S/R
Incremental signals	1 Vpp
Angular error	±40 ", for 256 S/R: ±93 "
Maximum permissible speeds	• With 2048 S/R: 12,000 r/min
	• With 512 S/R: 15,000 r/min
	• With 256 S/R: 24,000 r/min

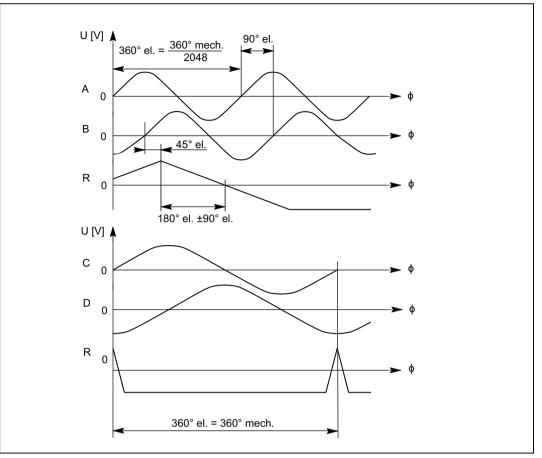


Figure 5-1 Signal sequence and assignment for a positive direction of rotation (clockwise direction of rotation when viewed from the drive end)

### Connection

PIN No.	Signal	
1	A	
2	A*	
3	R	
4	D*	
5	С	
6	C*	
7	M encoder	
8	+1R1	
9	-1R2	
10	P encoder	
11	В	
12	B*	
13	R*	
14	D	
15	0 V sense	
16	5 V sense	
17	not connected	

 Table 5-9
 Connection assignment, 17-pin flange-mounted socket

### Cables

### Mating connector: 6FX2003-0SU17

Table 5-10 Pre-fabricated cable for SINAMI	CS
--	----

6FX	□ 002 - 2CA31 -	<b>0</b>
	$\checkmark$	$\uparrow \uparrow \uparrow$
	$\downarrow$	Length
	5 MOTION-CON- NECT®500	Max. cable length 100 m
	8 MOTION-CON- NECT®800	5

For other technical data and length code, refer to catalog, Chapter "MOTION-CONNECT connection system"

### 5.1.2.7 Absolute encoder AM 2048 S/R

### Function

- Angular measuring system for the commutation
- Speed actual value sensing
- Indirect absolute measuring system for the position control loop

Table 5-11	Properties and technical data
------------	-------------------------------

Properties	Absolute encoder (EnDat)	
Coupling at the NDE	• with SH 80 to 225: Integrated in the motor	
	• with SH 280: Built on to the motor	
Operating voltage	+5 V ±5 %	
Current consumption	max. 300 mA	
Incremental resolution (periods per revolution)	2048 S/R	
Absolute resolution (coded revolution)	4096	
Incremental signals	1 Vpp	
Serial absolute position interface	EnDat	
Angular error	±40"	
Maximum permissible speeds	With 2048 S/R: 12,000 r/min	

### Connection

PIN No.	Signal	
1	A	
2	A*	
3	data	
4	not connected	
5	clock	
6	not connected	
7	M encoder	
8	+1R1	
9	-1R2	
10	P encoder	
11	В	
12	B*	
13	data*	10 <b>9 8</b>
14	clock*	
15	0 V sense	When viewing the plug-in side (pins)
16	5 V sense	
17	not connected	

 Table 5-12
 Connection assignment, 17-pin flange-mounted socket

### Cables

Mating connector: 6FX2003-0SU17

Table 5-13	Pre-fabricated	cable for SINAMICS
	The fublicated	

6FX	□ 002 - 2EQ10 -	0
	$\checkmark$	$\uparrow \uparrow \uparrow$
	$\downarrow$	Length
	5 MOTION-CON- NECT®500	Max. cable length 100 m
	8 MOTION-CON- NECT®800	5

For other technical data and length code, refer to catalog, Chapter "MOTION-CONNECT connection system"

### 5.2 Options

### 5.2.1 Overview of options

Chapter "Selection and ordering data (Page 35)" contains an overview of which options are available for which shaft heights.

### 5.2.2 Sealing air connection (option Q12)

Cooling lubricants containing oil capable of creepage, which can also be corrosive, are mainly used for machine tools and transfer machines. For critical applications involving media with extremely high creepage rates, generally degree of protection against water (according to EN 60034-5/IEC 60034-5) alone is not sufficient. To address these particular applications, 1PH8 main motors can be ordered with sealing air connection by specifying option Q12. The sealing air connection can be implemented both when using a terminal box and a power connector.

#### Note

#### Improved protection against oils and media that can creep

Sealing air does not increase the IP degree of protection against water. It does, however, improve protection against oils and media that can creep.

#### Note

This option is only permissible for motors without relubrication.

#### Note

#### Increase the pressure for "Premium Performance" bearing version

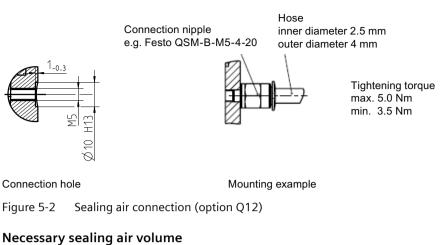
For the "Premium Performance" bearing version, you must increase the supply pressure to min. 2.0 x  $10^5$  Pa up to max. 5 x  $10^5$  Pa.

### Conditioning: A Main drives without a shaft sealing ring

Min. inlet temperature (°C)	Ambient temperature
Max. inlet temperature (°C)	40
Max. residual water content (g/m³)	0.12
Max. residual oil content (g/m³)	0.01
Max. residual dust (mg/m³)	0.1
Min. supply pressure (Pa)	2.0 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
Max. supply pressure (Pa)	3 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
Particle size for hollow shaft encoder (µm)	< 8
Particle size for optical encoders (µm)	< 3

#### Conditioning: B Main drives with a shaft sealing ring

Min. inlet temperature (°C)	Ambient temperature
Max. inlet temperature (°C)	40
Max. residual water content (g/m³)	0.12
Max. residual oil content (g/m³)	0.01
Max. residual dust (mg/m³)	0.1
Min. supply pressure (Pa)	0.05 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
Max. supply pressure (Pa)	0.1 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
Particle size for hollow shaft encoder (µm)	< 8
Particle size for optical encoders (µm)	< 3



#### - -

Volume (Nm <sup>3</sup> /h) (Nm = standard cubic meter)	Approx. 2.3 (at 2 bar)

#### Note

The volume data refers to the specified minimum supply pressure. For higher supply pressures, the flow rate increases corresponding to the motor flow resistance.

### 5.2.3 Protection against explosion (options M03 and M39)

#### Overview

The 1PH8 motors can be used in hazardous areas if certain operating conditions are met.

Explosion protection zone	Option	Shaft heights
2	M03	SH 100 to SH 160
22	M39	SH 100 to SH 160
		SH 180 and SH 225

This intended use in a hazardous area Zone 2 or Zone 22 complies with directives 2014/34/EU and 1999/92/EC – as well as the series of IEC/EN 60079 standards.

## Design criteria for shaft heights 100 to 160

Descriptions		(da	ta j	pos	itio	n in	Artio	le N	o.)														
		1	2	:	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	1	0	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
		1	Р		Н	8																	
Shaft height 100	0						1	0															
Shaft height 132 1 3																							
Shaft height 160	Shaft height 160 1 6																						
<b>Overall length</b> (cannot be selected, determined by the choice of rated power)																							
Induction versio	'n										1												
Synchronous ve	rsion (only shaft h	eigh	nt 1	32	and	160	))				2												
Encoder sys-	Without encoder	1)										Α											
tems	Absolute encoder	EnD	at 2	204	8 S	R (e	ncod	er AN	/204	8S	/R) <sup>2)</sup>	E											
for motors without a	Incremental enco HTL1024S/R) <sup>1)3)</sup>	der I	HTL	10	24 :	S/R (	enco	der				Н											
DRIVE-CLiQ in- terface	Incremental enco HTL2048S/R) <sup>1) 4)</sup>	der H	HTL	204	48 :	S/R (	enco	der				J											
	Incremental enco tracks (encoder IC					<sub>pp</sub> 20	)48 S	/R wi	th C	ano	d D	М											
Winding ver-	Rated speeds	40	0 r/	mir	ı, 5	00 r/	min,	600	r/mir	I			В										
sion	(3 AC 380 V to 480 V)	1000 r/min, 1150 r/min, 1350 r/min									D	,											
		1500 r/min, 1750 r/min, 2000 r/min								F													
	2000 r/min, 2300 r/min, 2650 r/min						G	i															
Cooling	Forced ventila- tion NDE -> DE	(degree of protection IP 55)									1												
	Water cooling	(de	(degree of protection IP 55)									2	1										
Type of con-	IM B3 (IM V5, IM	V6)														0							
struction	IM B5 (IM V1, IM	V3)														2							
	IM B35 (IM V15, I	M V3	35)	5)												3							
Shaft exten- sion (DE)	Balancing																						
Plain shaft																		0					
Fitted key	Full-key																	1					
Fitted key	Half-key																	2					
Bearings	Vibration se- verity acc. to Siemens/EN 60034-14	Sha flar				асу																	
Standard with locating bearing	R/A	R																	В	1			
Standard with locating bearing	S/A	R																	C				
Standard with location bear- ing <sup>1)</sup>	SR/A	R																	D				
Standard	R/A	R																	G	1			

Descriptions			(data position in Article No.)																		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	-	8	9	10	11	12	-	13	14	15	16	-	Z
Standard	S/A	R															Н				
Advanced Life- time <sup>6)</sup>	S/A	R															Q				
Power connec- tion	Cable entry	Sig	nal o	conne	ectio	n	(loo	okin	ng o	onto	DE)										
Terminal box (top)	Right	DE																Α			
Terminal box (top)	Left	DE																В			
Terminal box (top)	NDE	Lef	t															С			
Version		•																			
Version for potentially explosive atmospheres Zone 2											M										
Version for potentially explosive atmospheres Zone 22											M										
In the version for hazardous areas zone 2 and zone 22, the following options are not possible: A12, A25, G14, K80, L74, Q12, U60, U61, U62, U63, U65, U66, U67, U68, Y64,										Z											

1) Only possible if the 8th data position is "1" (induction version)

2) Limited to  $n_{max} = 12,000$  r/min

3) Limited to  $n_{max} = 9000 \text{ r/min}$ 

4) Limited to  $n_{max} = 4600 \text{ r/min}$ 

5) Only possible for shaft height 100, 132, and 160.

6) Limited to  $n_{max} = 5000$  r/min, shaft height 132:  $n_{max} = 4500$  r/min, shaft height 160:  $n_{max} = 4000$  r/min

Motors for hazardous areas have been released for SINAMICS S120 or SINAMICS G120 converters (version with PM 240). Carefully comply with the following constraints when operating the motors with third-party converters:

- Converters/inverters with pulse width modulation (PWM)
- The pulse clock frequency must be at least 4 kHz
- Converter output voltage according to the following table

Line supply voltage	Line Module (line-side converter/inverter infeed type)	Converter output voltage <sup>1</sup> )
3 AC 400 V	Smart Line Module (SLM) unregulated	380 V
	Active Line Module (ALM) regulated	425 V
3 AC 480 V	Smart Line Module (SLM) unregulated	460 V
	Active Line Module (ALM) regulated	500 V

<sup>1)</sup> Minimum output voltage required for motor operation in order to achieve data according to the data sheet.

The rated powers for motors for use in hazardous zones are reduced both in S1 and S6 duty in relation to the non-explosion protected version (standard version). The deratings are taken into account in the rating plate data:

Article No.	Version	Derating
1PH8xxx-1xx1x-xxx1-Z, M03, or M39	Induction, forced ventilation	10 %
1PH8xxx-1xx2x-xxx1-Z, M03, or M39	Induction, water cooling	20 %
1PH8xxx-2xx1x-xxx1-Z, M03, or M39	Synchronous, forced ventilation	20 %
1PH8xxx-2xx2x-xxx1-Z, M03, or M39	Synchronous, water cooling	20 %

In hazardous areas of Zone 2 (option M03), for induction motor versions, reduce the permissible maximum speeds  $(n_{max})$ :

Article No.	Version	Maximum speed n <sub>max</sub>
1PH810x-1xxxx-xxx1-Z, M03	Induction	4350 r/min
1PH813x-1xxxx-xxx1-Z, M03	Induction	3000 r/min
1PH816x-1xxxx-xxx1-Z, M03	Induction	2250 r/min

The motors with forced ventilation have newly developed separately driven fans for use in hazardous areas. These are in conformance with the applicable directives and standards. Take the modified dimensions from dimension drawings (SIEMENS Product Configurator).

The supply values for the separately driven fans are specified in the following table:

Article No.	Max. current consumption at								
	3 AC 400 V / 50 Hz (±10 %)	3 AC 400 V / 60 Hz (±10 %)	3 AC 480 V / 60 Hz (±10 %)						
	A	Α	Α						
1PH810x-1xx1x-xxx1-Z, M03 or M39	0.16	0.13	0.16						
1PH813x-1xx1x-xxx1-Z, M03 or M39 1PH813x-2xx1x-xxx1-Z, M03 or M39	0.26	0.24	0.28						
1PH816x-1xx1x-xxx1-Z, M03 or M39 1PH816x-2xx1x-xxx1-Z, M03 or M39	0.25	0.22	0.27						

#### Note

All of the separately driven fans are equipped with 3-phase motors.

### Operating conditions for shaft heights 100 to 160

When operating SIMOTICS M-1PH8 motors in Zone 2 or Zone 22 hazardous areas, carefully take into consideration the following application conditions:

- Provide specific operating instructions for the motors for when they are used in hazardous areas (see link and documentation in the Intranet/Internet).
- Motor versions for use in hazardous areas are not UL-approved. As a consequence, these motors do not bear the cUR marking.

- Zone 2 (option M03):
  - Marking: II 3 G Ex nA IIB T3 Gc -15  $^{\circ}$ C  $\leq$  Ta  $\leq$  +40  $^{\circ}$ C
  - Device group II, category 3G, temperature class T3
  - EN 60079-15: 2010 type of protection "nA" (no sparking)
  - Use in ambient temperatures -15 °C up to +40 °C at installation altitudes up to 1000 m
  - Motors with forced ventilation comply with the requirements for a low risk class with reference to shock resistance tests carried out at the fan housing.
  - Motors, Category 3G, are intended for use in hazardous Zone 2. In hazardous Zone 2, the
    occurrence of an explosive atmosphere is improbable; however, if it does occur in normal
    operation, then only very infrequently and only very briefly. A potentially explosive
    atmosphere can comprise, for example, of air and flammable gases, vapors or mist.
  - According to standard EN 60079-14, the ignition temperature of the potentially explosive gas atmosphere must be higher than 200 °C (temperature class T3).
- Zone 22 (option M39):
  - Marking: II 3D Ex tc IIIB T160 °C Dc IP55 -15 °C  $\leq$  Ta  $\leq$  +40 °C
  - Device group II, category 3D
  - Protection afforded by the enclosure tc, degree of protection IP55
  - EN 60079-31: 2014 Protection afforded by the enclosure
  - Maximum surface temperature 160 °C (according to EN 60079-0: 2012 general requirements)
  - Use in ambient temperatures -15 °C up to +40 °C at installation altitudes up to 1000 m
  - Motors with forced ventilation comply with the requirements for a low risk class with reference to shock resistance tests carried out at the fan housing.
  - Motors, Category 3D, are intended for use in hazardous Zone 22 (non-conductive dust). In hazardous Zone 22, the occurrence of an explosive atmosphere is improbable; however, if it does occur in normal operation, then only very infrequently and only very briefly. The potentially explosive atmosphere comprises a mixture of dust and air.
  - According to standard EN 60079-14, the ignition temperature of a dust cloud must be 50 % higher than the maximum surface temperature of the equipment being used. In this case, the ignition temperature of a dust cloud must be > 240 °C. The ignition temperature of a layer of dust with a maximum thickness of 5 mm must be 75 Kelvin higher than the maximum surface temperature of the motor. In this case, the ignition temperature of a dust cloud must be > 235 °C.
- Evaluate the temperature sensor embedded in the motor winding.
- Set the tripping temperature of the sensor to 135 °C.
- Safely and reliably shut down explosion protected separately driven fans when an overload condition occurs. PTC sensors are integrated as standard for overload protection, which must be evaluated according to EN 60079-14. Alternatively, a suitable motor circuit breaker can be used for overload protection.
- The explosion-protected, forced ventilated and water-cooled SIMOTICS M-1PH8 motors have degree of protection IP55.

- Attach the twist protection provided for the signal connector in compliance with regulations.
- Use Ex-certified cable glands for the power connection. Close and seal unused threads using Ex-certified screw plugs.
- The thermal stability of the connecting cables must be at least 80 °C. Plastic-insulated, flexible cables must have the same durability as heavy-duty, rubber-insulated cables. SIEMENS MOTION-CONNECT power and signal cables meet these requirements.
- The motors have a ground connection at the bearing shield/enclosure. Additionally ground the motors at this connection point.
- Belt drives are only permissible if buildup of a static charge is ruled out in the machinery.
- Do not repaint/touch up explosion-proof motors. However, if this is required, then comply with the following requirements:
  - Limit the surface resistance of the paint used: Surface resistance  $\leq$  1 G $\Omega$  for motors belonging to device group III
  - Breakdown voltage  $\leq$  4 kV for device group III
- Contact Technical Support (Chapter "Introduction") for the correct paint structure.

#### Note

For additional information, please contact Technical Support or your local sales partner.

#### Design criteria for shaft heights 180 to 225

The motors with option M39 can be selected with the following article number suffix.

1PH818x-1Ax1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39

- 1PH818x-1Ex1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH818x-1Hx1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH818x-1Jx1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH818x-1Mx1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH822x-1Ax1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH822x-1Ex1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH822x-1Hx1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH822x-1Jx1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39
- 1PH822x-1Mx1x-xxx1-Z, Z=M39

The listed motors cannot be supplied with the Performance bearings (14th data position = "L").

1PH8 motors, shaft heights 180 and 225 with option M39 are implemented with insulated NDE bearings as standard.

Article No.	Max. current consumption at							
	3 AC 400 V (±10 %);	3 AC 400 V (±10 %); 3 AC 400 V (±10 %); 3 AC 480 V (+5 % / -10 %);						
	50 Hz	60 Hz	60 Hz					
	А	А	А					
1PH818□-	0.6	0.65	0.6					
1PH822□-	1.6	1.3	1.5					

The supply values for the separately driven fans are specified in the following table:

#### Note

All of the separately driven fans are equipped with 3-phase motors.

### Operating conditions for shaft heights 180 and 225

Carefully take into account the following operating conditions when operating motors in a Zone 22 hazardous area:

- Provide specific operating instructions for the motors for when they are used in hazardous areas (see link and documentation in the Intranet/Internet).
- Zone 22 (option M39):
  - Marking: II 3D Ex tc IIIB T155 °C Dc IP55 -15 °C  $\leq$  Ta  $\leq$  +40 °C
  - Device group II, category 3D
  - Protection afforded by the enclosure, tc
  - Maximum surface temperature 155 °C (according to EN 60079-0: 2012 general requirements)
  - Use in ambient temperatures -15 °C up to +40 °C at installation altitudes up to 1000 m
- Evaluate the temperature sensor embedded in the motor winding.
- Safely and reliably shut down explosion protected separately driven fans when an overload condition occurs. PTC sensors are integrated as standard for overload protection, which must be evaluated according to EN 60079-14.
- Attach the twist protection provided for the signal connector in compliance with regulations.
- Use Ex-certified cable glands for the power connection. Close and seal unused threads using Ex-certified screw plugs.
- The thermal stability of the connecting cables must be at least 80 °C. Plastic-insulated, flexible cables must have the same durability as heavy-duty, rubber-insulated cables. SIEMENS MOTION-CONNECT power and signal cables meet these requirements.
- The motors have a ground connection at the bearing shield/enclosure. Additionally ground the motors at this connection point.
- Belt drives are only permissible if buildup of a static charge is ruled out in the machinery.
- Keep the motors free of dust layers > 5 mm.

- The type of construction IM V5 is only permissible with a protective roof (protection from falling parts)
- Do not repaint/touch up explosion-proof motors. However, if this is required, then comply with the following requirements:
  - Limit the surface resistance of the paint used: Surface resistance  $\leq$  1 G $\Omega$  for motors belonging to device group III
  - Breakdown voltage ≤ 4 kV for device group III

Contact Technical Support (Chapter "Introduction") for the correct paint structure.

#### Note

For additional information, please contact Technical Support or your local sales partner.

### 5.2.4 Increased resistance to vibration (option L03)

#### Overview

1PH8 motors with shaft heights 180 and 225 and with the option L03 can be used in compliance with certain operating conditions for applications with an increased vibration load. Possible applications, for example on servo presses.

#### Design criteria for shaft heights 180 and 225

In conjunction with the option L03, the following motors can be selected:

1PH818x-1Ax00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Ax10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Ex00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Ex10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Hx00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Hx10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Jx10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Jx10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-1Mx10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-2Ex00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-2Ex10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-2Ex10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-2Mx00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-2Mx00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH818x-2Mx10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03

1PH822x-1Ax10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-1Ex00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-1Ex10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-1Hx00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-1Hx10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-1Jx00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-1Jx10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-1Mx00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-2Ex00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-2Ex10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-2Ex10-xxx1-Z, Z=L03 1PH822x-2Mx00-xxx1-Z, Z=L03

# Operating conditions of shaft heights 180 and 225

The vibration load that is permissible by default for the 1PH8 main motors is described in Chapter "Vibration response." Take the maximum permissible vibration acceleration rates in conjunction with option LO3 from the following table:

Table 5-14	Maximum permissible vibration accelerations	
------------	---	--

	Standard SH 180 and SH 225	Option L03 SH 180	Option L03 SH 225
Vertical	1.0 g	4.0 g	3.5 g
Horizontal	1.0 g	3.5 g	3.2 g
Axial	1.0 g	3.5 g	3.2 g

Vibration acceleration rates (0 peak) in the frequency range from 0 Hz to 1 kHz at the bearings must not exceed the values listed in the table. The position of the measuring points is defined in ISO 10816-1. The customer must pin the 1PH8 motor at the DE and NDE using a cylindrical grooved pin according to ISO 8740. To do this, place the motor down on a metal foundation. For easier removal, do not use blind holes in the foundation for the pinning. Recommendation: Through holes for pressing through the cylindrical grooved pins.

Grooved pins acc. to ISO 8740	SH 180	SH 225
Grooved pin diameter	5 mm	6 mm

# **Measures included**

- Reinforced version of a DE bearing shield
- Fan unit (EC fan) with upgraded electronic components
- Screws locked with Loctite 270

Otherwise, the statements and regulations in this Configuration Manual apply.

#### Note

For additional information, please contact Technical Support or your local sales partner.

# 5.2.5 Holding brake (option)

### 5.2.5.1 Properties

# Operation with holding brake on the SINAMICS S

The SINAMICS S drive system has various types of brake control. A detailed description of the individual functions and corresponding parameter assignment information is provided in the following manuals:

- SINAMICS S120 Function Manual (6SL3097-4AB00-0AP1)
- SINAMICS S120/S150 List Manual (6SL3097-4AP00-0AP3)

Information on the current carrying capacity of the brake outputs/adapters of the individual SINAMICS power units can be found in the corresponding manuals. It may be necessary to control the brake using additional switching elements.

Ensure that the brake data are correctly parameterized in SINAMICS. This is particularly important for the setting values:

- Maximum motor speed (reduced value for the "holding brake" option)
- Opening and closing times of the holding brake
- Moment of inertia of the holding brake

The corresponding setting values are listed for the specific brakes in the "Technical data of the holding brake" table.

# Functional principle of the holding brake

A brake can be mounted at the DE side of 1PH8 motors, shaft heights 80, 100, 132, 160, 180 and 225.

These brakes are electromagnetic units for dry-running operation. An electromagnetic field is used to release the brake which is applied using spring force. They function according to the closed-circuit principle, i.e. when in a no-current state, the spring-actuated brake closes and holds the drive. When power is applied to the brake, it is released and the drive is free to rotate.

In the event of a power failure or an Emergency Stop, the drive is braked from its actual speed down to standstill.

### Brake connection (must be provided on the system side)

- Alternating voltage 230 VAC, 50 ... 60 Hz
- 24 V DC up to shaft height 160

### Ambient temperature

The brake module is designed for an ambient temperature of  $-5^{\circ}$  C to  $+40^{\circ}$  C. At temperatures below  $-5^{\circ}$  C and longer periods without power being applied to the brake, then it cannot be excluded that the friction disk freezes. In this case, contact the manufacturer regarding special measures that are required.

### Note

### Restricted maximum motor speed for a motor equipped with brake

The maximum speed of a motor with holding brake is limited to the maximum speed of the holding brake (see  $n_{max, Br}$  speed specified in the characteristic curves).

#### Note

### Selection and ordering data

The selection and ordering data is contained in the chapter of the same name.

#### Note

### No UL approval for the holding brakes for 1PH8, shaft heights 180 and 225

The holding brakes for motors, shaft heights 180 and 225 are not UL approved. As a consequence, these motors with mounted brake do not have the cUR marking.

# Technical data of the holding brakes

 Table 5-15
 Technical data of the mounted holding brake (DE) with emergency stop function

Shaft height	80	100	132	160	180	225
Motor type	1PH808□	1PH810□	1PH813□	1PH816□	1PH818□	1PH822□
Brake type	Size 13	Size 13	Size 13	Size 13	NFF-A 63	NFF-A 100
Holding torque	29	6015	140310	280500	1000	1600
Nm						
Maximum speed n <sub>max</sub>	5000	5000	4500	4000	3500	3100
r/min						
Moment of inertia $J_{\scriptscriptstyle B}$	0.00093	0.0048	0.0141	0.0266	0.022	0.051
kgm²						
Weight m <sub>Br</sub>	10	21	46	66	63	88
kg						
Coil current 230 V AC ±10 %	0.8	1.0	1.3	1.9	2.2	2.7
A						

Shaft height	80	100	132	160	180	225
Coil current AC 24 V ±10 %	4.1	4.7	6.9	6.7	-	-
A						
Permitted single-use operating energy W <sub>E</sub>	2.2	7	16	24	98	210
kJ						
Total moment of iner- tia (Emergency Stop) J <sub>tot</sub> kgm <sup>2</sup>	0.0174	0.063	0.218	0.456	13	3.9
Emergency stop speed n r/min	4800	4500	3600	3100	3000	2800
Number of emergency stops z <sup>1)</sup>	2000	2000	2000	2000	2000	1200
Opening time t <sub>o</sub>	150	500	650	750	300	300
ms						
Closing time t <sub>C1</sub> <sup>2)</sup>	300	500	1000	1100	80	100
ms	(40)	(60)	(100)	(150)		

<sup>1)</sup> Max. 3 switching operations per hour

<sup>2)</sup> Closing time at 230 V AC (the time in brackets refers to the closing time for a 24 V DC power supply, and the reduced closing time when using a DC circuit with 230 V AC power supply)

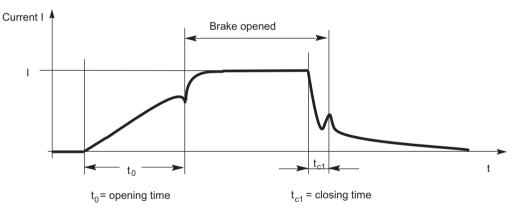


Figure 5-3 Terminology (time) for holding operation

# Explanation of terminology in the table

**Holding torque Nm:** on motors with shaft heights 100 ... 160, the holding torque can be continuously set in the specified value range using an adjusting ring. The dynamic braking torque is approximately 70 % of the set holding torque.

**Speed** n<sub>max</sub> **r/min:** Maximum permissible speed.

**Permitted single-use operating energy W\_{E} kJ:** Permissible operating energy for an emergency stop,

 $W_E = J_{tot} \cdot x n^2 / 182.4 x 10^{-3}$  (J in kgm<sup>2</sup>, n in r/min)

**Lifetime operating energy W**<sub>max</sub> **MJ:** Max. possible switching energy of the brake (for emergency stop) until the brake linings have to be replaced,  $W_{max} = W_E x z$ 

**Number of emergency stops z:** The specified number of emergency stops refers to the specified conditions. A conversion can be made for operation under different conditions: Number of EMERGENCY STOPs  $z = W_{max}/W_{E}$ 

**Coil current A:** Current to release the brake.

**Opening time**  $t_0$  ms: Separating time until the brake opens (the specified values refer to the maximum braking torque and at rated voltage).

**Closing time t**<sub>C1</sub> **ms:** Interlocking time until the brake closes according to diagram "Terminology (time) for holding operation." (the values refer to the maximum braking torque and at rated voltage.).

# Use for the intended purpose

"Single-disk spring-operated brake control modules" are for mounting on induction or synchronous motors and intended for use in commercial or industrial systems. Use in hazardous areas is absolutely prohibited. The integrated single-disk spring-operated brake (electromagnetically opening system) is designed as holding brake. Occasional Emergency Stop operations are possible.

### NOTICE

### Irreversible reduction of the braking effect

The braking effect can be irreversibly reduced if you do not comply with the permissible number of braking operations per hour and/or the maximum permissible operating energy per hour. Further, this can have a negative impact on the function of the holding brake.

- When setting up machines and systems (when using the jog mode), carefully observe the information provided in the Table "Technical data of holding brakes".
- You can equip the holding brake with a manual brake release to remove the holding torque.

# NOTICE

### Inadvertent operation of the holding brake

Material damage can occur if you inadvertently apply or release the holding brake.

- Secure the holding brake against inadvertent operation and misuse. The mechanical manual brake release must be in the center position when not actuated (see the diagram "Spring-actuated single-disk brake module"). Only then is the brake completely closed, and it is ensured that the spring-actuated single-disk brake module can provide its full braking effect.
- You can remove the manual release lever. Strictly observe the specific system-related regulations, e.g. in the crane construction area relating to whether manual brake release is permissible.
- For the rated operating conditions, see DIN VDE 0580: 1994-10. For the degree of protection see DIN VDE 0470, part 1. If deviations exist, coordinate special measures with the manufacturer.

# \Lambda WARNING

### Danger to life if the holding brake is used incorrectly

If you incorrectly use the holding brake, e.g. you use it as safety brake, this can lead to severe accidents involving injury and/or material damage.

• Depending on the particular application, strictly observe the appropriate accident prevention regulations.

### Note

### **Special measures**

If you find references to special measures and/or it is necessary to consult the manufacturer, already obtain the manufacturer's advice when you configure the system.

# 5.2.5.2 Mounted holding brake for SH 80 to SH 160

# **Properties**

The holding brakes for motors, shaft heights 80, 100, 132 and 160 are brake modules (manufactured by Kendrion Binder Magnete) with their own bearings, flange and shaft extension. The dimensions of the flange and shaft extension of the brake module are identical with those of the motor. If a motor is to be equipped with a brake, then a motor version with a flange-type of construction and a smooth shaft (without keyway and key) is used. The shaft of the brake module can then be shrunk onto the motor shaft (thermal technique). It can be released using pressurized oil. The brake module is bolted to the motor flange.

### Note

### **Radial and axial forces**

The specifications for the "standard" bearing version apply for the permissible radial and axial forces.

### See also

Radial and axial force diagrams (Page 115)

# Method of operation

The brake module is an electromagnetic component with integrated electromagnetically opening single-disk spring-operated brake for dry running, in which the braking effect is applied by the spring force and canceled electromagnetically.

If required, the braking effect can also be canceled by an additional mounted manual release. The brake module is a mounted brake, preferably on the DE end shield of electric motors, as built-on unit with bearing supported driver pin shaft.

# Structure

The solenoid housing (7) with the cast excitation winding (6) is used to accommodate the armature (2), the friction disk (3) and the flange (4) that is attached using cylinder head screws. The compression springs in the solenoid housing that are supported via the thrust studs (size 13) on the adjustment ring (9), apply a force to the friction disk via the anchor in the axial direction and thus clamp the friction disk between the rigidly mounted flange and the anchor and produce the braking effect (torque). The tangent torque support of the armature against the solenoid housing is performed by the dowel pins.

When a direct voltage is applied to the excitation winding, the resulting electromagnetic force pulls the armature against the force of the compression springs, the friction disk is released and thus the braking effect canceled.

As the brake module represents a self-contained system, no forces are applied externally.

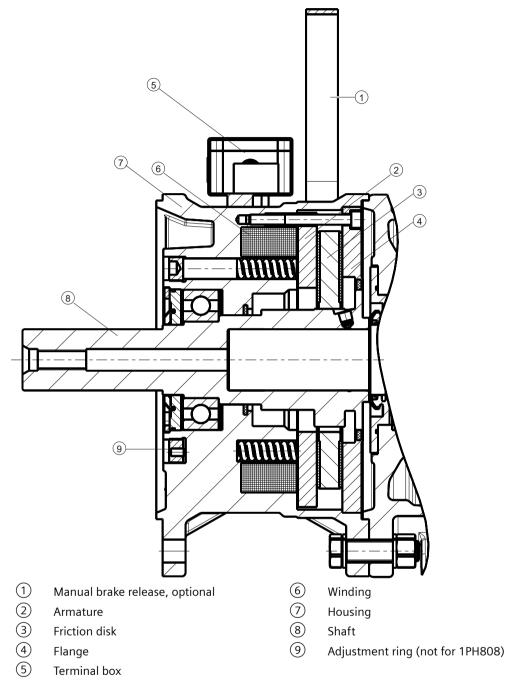
The braking effect of the axial moving friction disk is transmitted to the driver pin shaft 8 fixed to the motor shaft via the keyed connection of the internal square socket (sizes 13, 19 and 24) and/or via internal gearing (size 29).

The ball bearing located between the solenoid housing and the driver pin shaft is used to center the brake to the driver pin shaft and therefore to the motor shaft when mounting the brake on the motor flange and also to absorb the transverse forces acting radially on the driver pin shaft.

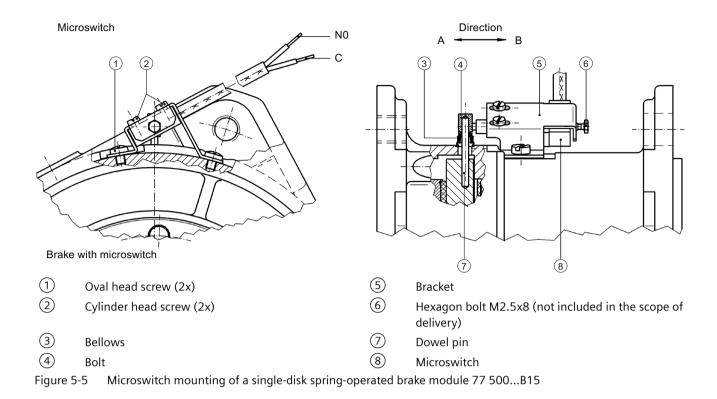
The ball bearing comes sealed from the factory. As additional protection against pollution and to prevent grease from a defective ball bearing seal reaching the friction disk, a sealing ring is mounted that prevents dirt, grease or oil reaching the area of the friction disk from the outside and abraded particles due to the wear of the friction disk escaping.

The sealing ring provides the drive-side sealing between the flange and the driver pin shaft. The single-disk spring-operated brake module can be opened mechanically by hand, e.g. in the event of a power failure, via the optional manual release (1). The electrical connection is established directly in the terminal box (5).

The transmissible torque of the brake module can be set via the adjustment ring.







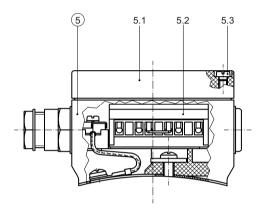
# **Electrical connection**

Fire hazard and risk of destroying the brake module
The brake module is an electromagnetic component and a DC system. An impermissibly high connection voltage at the brake module can cause the rectifier or the winding to burn. This can block the brake module, causing it to overheat.
If the connection voltage is too low, the magnetic excitation will also be too low, preventing the brake from being released. The brake goes into the brake mechanism although this is not wanted.
Nale averable the table of the second state of the second state we have a state of the second state of the

- Make sure that the connection voltage of the brake module remains within the permissible tolerance of +10 % to -10 % of the nominal voltage. Comply with the legal standards for connection to the grid. Pay attention to the correct dimensioning of the cable lengths and conductor cross-sections in the connection cables.
- Check the electrical connection of the holding brake based on the following checklist.

Check	ОК
The connection cables are suitable for the type of use and the voltages and currents that occur.	
The connection cables are connected correctly by means of screws, clamps or other equivalent means, so that the electrical connection is maintained permanently.	

Check	ОК
Adequately dimensioned connecting cables, torsion, strain and shear relief as well as anti-kink protection are provided for the connection cables.	
The protective conductor (only for protection class I) is connected at the grounding point.	
There is no foreign matter, dirt or moisture in the terminal box.	
Unused cable entries and the terminal box itself are sealed so that the specified degree of protection ac- cording to EN 60529 is maintained.	



- 5 Terminal box
- 5.1 Cover
- 5.2 Connecting terminal or rectifier
- 5.3 Fixing screw for cover

Figure 5-6 Holding brake terminal box (5) optionally with terminal or rectifier

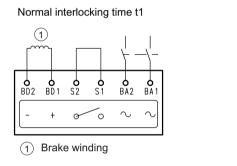
- Connect the spring-applied single-disk brake module to the direct voltage. Use a rectifier bridge or half-wave rectifier for electrical connection to an AC power system.
- For brakes with integrated rectifiers, you can connect the spring-applied single-disk brake module directly to alternating voltage.
- See the figure for the terminal assignment.
- For brakes with a connecting terminal, you must connect the brake module directly to direct voltage. Connect the customer-specific connection cable to the terminals or to the integrated rectifier. Use a screwed cable gland (M16 x 1.5) for the connection.
- You must remove the cover of the terminal box to connect the individual cores of the connecting cable to the connecting terminals or to the terminals of the integrated rectifier.

Туре	Method	Rated input voltage range U <sub>1</sub> AC (40 60 Hz)	Output voltage U <sub>2</sub> DC	Max. output	current
		V	V	R load A	L load A
32 07332B40	Half- wave	0 500 (±10 %)	U <sub>1</sub> · 0.445	1.6	2.0

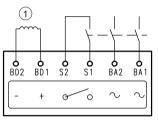
Table 5-17Rectifier for operation on single-phase AC with electrical connection via connection<br/>terminal (5.2)

Brakes with integrated rectifiers are either equipped with a half-wave rectifier or with a rectifier bridge.

By appropriately connecting the integrated rectifier, you switch between AC (normal interlocking time  $t_1$ ) or DC (short interlocking time  $t_1$ ).



Shortened interlocking time t1



With DC-side switching, AC-side switching must also be performed.

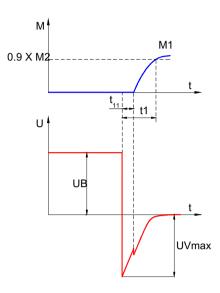
Figure 5-7 Pin assignment of the rectifier

Voltage ripples caused by switched-mode power supplies can cause humming or unintended behavior of the component depending on the size and torque.

The user or the system manufacturer has to ensure proper operation by means of the electrical control.

# **DC** connection

The basic curve of the voltage when the excitation winding (coil) (1.2) is switched off is as follows.



U<sub>B</sub> Operating voltage (coil voltage)

U Transient voltage

Figure 5-8 Basic curve of the voltage when turning off the excitation winding

# NOTICE

### Overvoltages when switching off

The voltage peak  $U_{Vmax}$  when switching off can reach several 1000 V in the millisecond range without a protective circuit.

The excitation winding (coil) (1.2), switching contacts and electronic components can be destroyed.

Sparks form at the switch on switch-off.

• When it is switched off, the current must therefore be reduced via a snubber circuit. This also limits the voltages. The maximum permissible overvoltage when switching off must not exceed 1500 V.

If Kendrion Binder rectifiers are used, the protective circuit for the internal electronic components and for the excitation winding (coil) (1.2) is integrated. This does not apply

for the external contacts required for the DC-side switching because the galvanic isolation of the external contact is then no longer achieved.

# NOTICE

### Component damage resulting from a lower voltage

Sensitive electronic components (e.g. logic components) and mechanical contact elements can also be damaged by the lower voltage.

• Make sure that the voltage does not fall below the specified value, e.g. due to insufficient conductor cross-sections.

### AC connection

#### NOTICE

#### Impermissible overvoltages

If you operate the brake module without a snubber circuit in a circuit on the DC side, impermissible overvoltages can arise.

- Use a snubber circuit.
- Avoid damage, e.g. due to contact erosion or contact welding of the external contact elements by taking additional protection measures, e.g. varistors or spark suppression elements.

Direct connection to an AC voltage is only possible via a rectifier. Depending on the connection method (DC or AC operation), different interlocking times can be achieved.

• Half-wave rectification

With half-wave rectification, the coil voltage  $U_2$  is less than the input voltage on the rectifier by a factor of 0.445. Half-wave rectifiers have a high residual ripple which have somewhat shorter switching times compared to the bridge rectification, depending on the module size. The half-wave rectifier is therefore preferable (also because of the smaller coil voltages). However, humming can occur in brake modules of small size.

• DC operation With DC-side circuitry of the brake module, an additional auxiliary contact is plugged into the motor contactor, which interrupts the current supply to the brake module on the DC side.

### Electrical connection of brake modules with microswitches

# Note

#### Use of microswitches

• Observe the special regulations regarding the permissible use of microswitches, e.g. for lifting gear and crane construction.

# \Lambda warning

### Accidental motor starting

In an unsecured motor circuit, the motor can start accidentally when the microswitch is closed. This can result in injury and/or material damage.

• Secure the motor circuit accordingly.

In brake modules with microswitches, the microswitch monitors the operating state of the spring-applied single-disk brake module. The brake module is either open or closed.

• For example, integrate the microswitch into the control circuit for controlling the machine or the motor.

The microswitch prevents the machine or motor from starting against a closed brake module if it is integrated correctly.

When ordering, the microswitch is available as an option. It is not possible to subsequently mount a microswitch.

When the brake module is supplied, the microswitch is adjusted in the factory.

# Manual opening of the brake module

# 🔨 WARNING

### Accidental drive acceleration after manually operating the brake control module

If you manually open the spring-applied single-disk brake module, the load torque will accelerate an unbalanced drive. This can result in injury and/or material damage.

• Take special care when inching the brake module open or closed. Make sure that no danger is posed by the load torque.

Examples of situations in which manual operation of the brake module is necessary include

- Maintenance on the machine or the motor
- Failure of the regular power supply during UPS operation

The spring-applied single-disk brake module can be manually opened via an externally mounted mechanical manual brake release (accessory).

If you use a commercially available UPS power supply, e.g. a UPS battery system, the brake module can be opened electrically during a failure of the regular power supply.

• Observe the voltage stated on the nameplate of the brake module when installing a UPS power supply.

# Setting of the transmissible torque M<sub>4</sub>

# Note

### Torque M<sub>4</sub>

The transmissible torque must not fall below the minimum value M<sub>4</sub> when you adjust the adjustment ring according to table "Change of the transmissible torque."

- Always mark the modified adjustment ring distance E in the base of the solenoid housing pocket using a punch prick.
- Mark the theoretically set transmissible torque M<sub>4</sub> on the nameplate of the motor. The empty field "Optional customer information" on the nameplate is available for this.
- After you have set the transmissible torque  $M_4$ , make sure that you secure the adjustment ring with a threaded pin. Comply with the tightening torque of  $M_A = 3$  Nm.
- Turn the adjustment ring in such a way that the threaded pin can be located between the thrust studs. Deviations of the transmissible torque  $M_4$  from -5% to +15% are possible.

The brake module is delivered with the transmissible torque  $M_4$  set to the default value according to the data sheet. You will find the transmissible torque  $M_4$  on the nameplate of the brake module.

	Size 19	Size 24	Size 29
Change of the transmissible torque $\Delta M_4/mm$ %	Approx. 15	Approx. 12	Approx. 14
Transmissible torque (standard value) $M_4$ Nm	150	310	500

Table 5-18Change of the transmissible torque  $M_4$  [%] for an axial travel path of the adjustment ring<br/>by 1 mm; transmissible torque (default value)  $M_4$ 

# 5.2.5.3 Mounted holding brake for SH 180 and SH 225

### Properties

For these motors, the brake (manufactured by Stromag) is mounted on the DE end shield. In this case, the motor shaft is extended using a shrunk-on stub shaft. The torque is transmitted through a feather key according to DIN 6885/1. The stub shaft can also be axially secured using a spring washer and a central screw (M20). The holding brake does not have its own bearings. The output forces are therefore absorbed by the motor bearings. Belt pulleys cannot be mounted due to space reasons and also due to the high associated cantilever forces. When selecting the coupling to couple to the motor - brake combination - it should be carefully noted that the shaft extension diameter is larger than the diameter of the motor shaft extension. REVOLEX bolt-type couplings 2LF6337 for shaft height 180 and 2LF6338 for shaft height 225 should be preferably used. Ordering data and dimensions, refer to catalog M 11 or D 81.1.

# Note

### **Radial and axial forces**

The specifications for the "standard" bearing version apply for the permissible radial and axial forces.

### See also

Radial and axial forces (Page 111)

44

73; 74

49

10

Ò

Ø

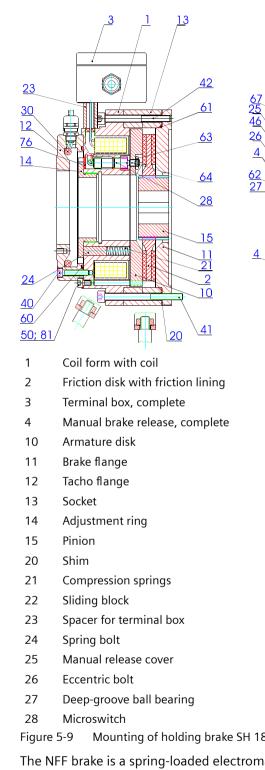
 $\boxtimes$ 

65

Ì

6

5.2 Options



# Design, method of operation and construction features

40 Screw for tacho flange

 $\bigcirc$ 

41 **Fixing screw** 

47/52/78

8

Ò

22

- 42 Cylinder head screw
- 46 Fixing screw for manual release cover
- 47 Screw for sliding block
- 49 Emergency release screw
- 50 Screw plug for emergency release
- 52 Screw for blockable manual release
- 60 O-ring for tacho
- 61 O-ring for brake flange
- 63 Lock nut for microswitch
- 64 Grub screw (microswitch)
- Screw plug for air gap measurement 65
- 67 Screw connection
- 73 Rating plate
- 74 Pin (rating plate mounting)
- 76 Adhesive
- 78 Washer for item 52
  - Sealing ring for item 50

Mounting of holding brake SH 180 and SH 225

The NFF brake is a spring-loaded electromagnetic twin-disk brake that brakes in the deenergized state and releases electromagnetically.

81

The NFF brake type satisfies the highest requirements for fatigue strength, robustness and resistance to sea water. The brakes are constructed and tested in compliance with DIN VDE 0580.

The brake is attached to a motor or another machine part using cylinder head screws (fixing screws, item 41).

The bobbin contains a coil that is permanently encapsulated in synthetic resin of thermal class 155 (F, max. temperature limit 155° C).

When the coil is de-energized, the compression springs (21) press the armature disk (10) axially against the friction disk with friction lining (2). This is clamped between the armature disk (10) and the brake flange (11) and thus prevented from rotating. The braking effect is transmitted to the shaft from the friction disk with friction lining (2) via the pinion (15) and a feather key.

If the coil is connected to a rated DC voltage according to the specifications on the rating plate (73), the armature disk (10) is pulled against the spring pressure to the coil form (1) through the electromagnetic force. The friction disk with friction lining (2) is therefore freed and the braking effect is canceled. The brake is released.

### Mechanical release using the manual release bar

By pulling the manual release bar (4) through approx. 30° against the rear side of the brake, the armature disk (10) is pulled axially against the coil form (1) and the friction disk with friction lining (2) is then free.

# M WARNING

### Incorrect use of the emergency release

If you use the emergency release to maintain operation temporarily, you may damage the brake. This can result in personal injury and damage to property.

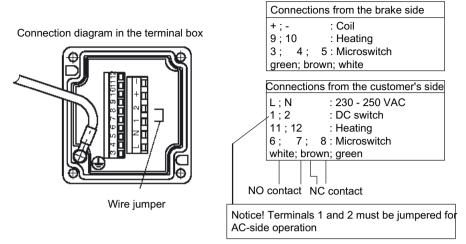
• Only ever use the emergency release in an emergency.

# Power supply line and electrical connection of the brake

The electrical connection must be made in compliance with the installation regulations (e.g. DIN 92). The power connection provided by the customer is 230 V AC +/- 10%.

The coil is dimensioned for the DC voltage specified on the rating plate (residual ripple < 0.5) and 100% cyclic duration. The continuously permissible voltage change is +6% to -10% of the rated voltage.

To protect the coil or the power supply, a varistor of the appropriate operating voltage range and the required power should be connected to the coil input.





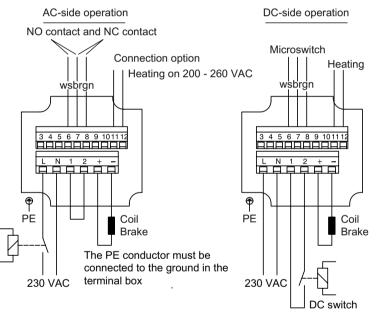


Figure 5-11 Circuit configurations

# Version with microswitch

If monitoring of the switching state is required for a brake, a microswitch (28) can be used.

If the armature disk (10) is moved against the coil form (1) through the electromagnetic force of the coil or through the mechanical emergency release, it actuates the microswitch (28) via the grub screw (64).

The microswitch (28) can be integrated as an NC or NO contact in an electrical control or monitoring circuit.

# 5.2.6 Anti-condensation heating (option K45)

Larger motors are prone to more frequent condensation on the winding caused by the climatic conditions because of the larger surfaces. Condensation can occur, for example, when motors are not operational in a humid environment or if motors are exposed to significant temperature fluctuations. Anti-condensation heaters heat the air in the motor by a few Kelvin above the ambient temperature and thus prevent precipitation inside the motor.

For 1PH8 motors, using option K45, order anti-condensation heating for shaft heights 180, 225 and 280. Option K45 comprises an anti condensation heater attached to the winding overhang with a heating power of 100 W for a supply voltage of 230 V AC (50/60 Hz). The 2 connection ends are routed into the main motor terminal box. Connect this via the auxiliary terminal strip. The connection ends are marked "1HE1" and "1HE2".

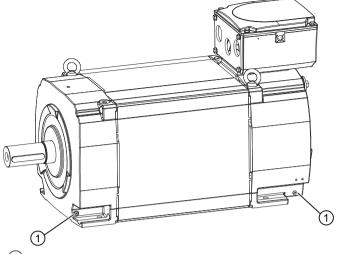
### Note:

- For shaft heights 180, 225, 280, the same strip heater is used.
- Do not switch on the anti-condensation heating while the motor is operational.
- The anti-condensation heaters for 1PH8 motors are UL-approved.
- In addition to the anti-condensation heating, for motors with degree of protection IP55, always take into consideration the condensation drain holes (Chapter "Condensation drain hole (option L12)").

# 5.2.7 Condensation drain hole (option L12)

In larger motors, there is a risk of condensation or accumulation of condensed water inside the motor due to the climatic conditions. Condensation drain holes prevent the accumulation of a damaging quantity of water in the motor. These are frequently used as the primary measure against condensation as they are easy to implement in the design.

For 1PH8 motors, the condensation drain holes are located at the lowest point in the NDE and DE end shields. As a consequence, they are only suitable for horizontal mounting in types of construction IM B3, IM B5 and IM B35. The condensation drain holes for shaft heights 180 and 225 are provided with a special insert (drainage plug); this insert is not required for shaft height 280.



① Water drainage hole

Figure 5-12 1PH8 motor with condensation drain holes

Table 5-19	1PH8 motors with condensation drain holes (optional)

Article No.	Cooling	Degree of pro- tection	Required op- tion	Comment
1PH818x-xxx0 1PH818x-xxx1	Forced ventila- tion	IP 55	L12	Bearing shield NDE and DE
1PH822x-xxx0 1PH822x-xxx1				
1PH828x-xxx1				
1PH818x-xxx2	Water cooling	IP 55	-	NDE and DE bearing shield (condensation drain hole al- ways included as standard)
1PH822x-xxx2				
1PH828x-xxx2				

# Note

- Condensation drain holes are only used in motors with degree of protection IP 55. For motors with degree of protection IP 23 (open-circuit ventilation), the open design does not require condensation drain holes. It is not possible that a potentially damaging amount of condensation can collect.
- Anti-condensation heating (see Chapter "Anti-condensation heating") can be used to supplement condensation drain holes.

# 5.2.8 Higher number of grounding terminals in the terminal box (Q00)

For option Q00 (higher number of grounding terminals in the terminal box), symmetrical power cables with a grounding conductor split into 3 can be connected more easily in the terminal box for high power ratings. For option Q00, the grounding bar in the terminal box has a higher number of terminals.

Table 5-20	Definition of OOO according to the type of terminal have
Table 5-20	Definition of Q00 according to the type of terminal box:

Shaft height SH	Terminal box type	Number of terminals (grounding) standard	Number of terminals (grounding) option Q00
280	1XB7712-P	4 x M16	12 x M6

Option Q00 has no influence on the dimension drawings, 3D drawings, and electrical configuration. This is the reason that this option is not included in the SIEMENS Product Configurator (SPC) nor in the TST.

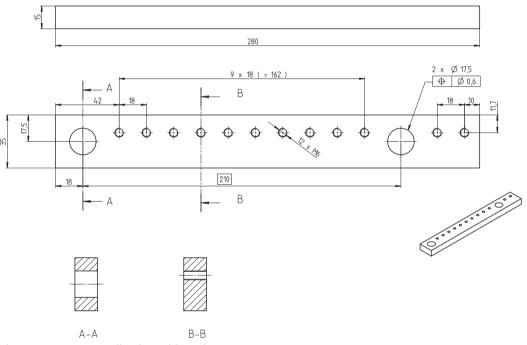


Figure 5-13 Grounding bar with option Q00

# 5.2.9 Chain of PTC thermistors for alarm and trip (option A12)

# Overview

In the 1PH8 motors, in addition to the standard temperature sensor in the stator winding (see Ch. "Thermal motor protection"), a chain of PTC thermistors for alarm and trip can be ordered with option A12.

The chain of PTC thermistors can also monitor the winding temperature. PTC thermistors are thermistors that exhibit a sudden increase in resistance at a certain trigger temperature. The trip units detect this resistance change and signal the trigger temperature. PTC thermistors are standardized in DIN 44081.

# **Circuit design**

Option A12 consists of two chains of PTC thermistors, each with 3 PTC thermistors for alarm and trip. The chain of PTC thermistors is installed in the phase elements on the winding overhang. The temperature difference between alarm and trip is 10 K.

The terminal designations for the two connection ends of the chain of PTC thermistors for alarm are 1TP1 and 1TP2; the terminal designations for the two connection ends of the PTC thermistor circuit for tripping are 2TP1 and 2TP2.

The circuit diagram and the terminal assignments are provided in the terminal box of the 1PH8 motor.

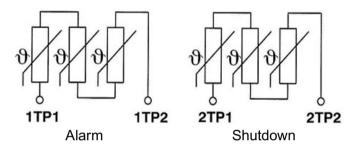


Figure 5-14 Chains of PTC thermistors option A12

# Configuration

# 6.1 Configuring software

# 6.1.1 TST engineering tool (TIA-Selection-Tool)

# Overview

The TIA-Selection-Tool (TST) engineering tool supports you when dimensioning the hardware and firmware components required for a drive application.

TST supports the following configuration steps:

- Configuring the power supply
- Designing the motor and gearbox, including calculation of mechanical transmission elements
- Configuring the drive components
- Compiling the required accessories
- Selection of the line-side and motor-side power options

The configuration process produces the following results:

- A parts list of components required (Export to Excel)
- Technical specifications of the system
- Characteristic curves
- Comments on system reactions
- Design information of the drive and control components
- Energy considerations of the configured drive systems

You can find additional information that you can download in the Internet at TST (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109767888</u>).

6.2 Procedure when engineering

# 6.2 Procedure when engineering

# 6.2.1 SINAMICS configuring procedure

# **Motion Control**

1PH8 motors are optimized for motion control applications. They execute linear or rotary movements within a defined movement cycle. All movements must be performed in a time-optimized manner. As a result of these considerations, 1PH8 motors must meet the following requirements:

- High dynamic response, e.g. short rise times
- Capable of overload, i.e. high acceleration margin
- Wide control range, i.e. high resolution for precise positioning.

The following table "Configuring procedure" is applicable for induction, synchronousreluctance and synchronous motors.

# General procedure when engineering

The function description of the machine provides the basis when engineering the drive application. The components are selected according to physical interdependencies and the selection process is usually carried out in the following sequence of steps:

Table 6-1 P	lanning
-------------	---------

Step	Description of configuration activity		
1.	Clarification of type of drive		
2.	Definition of supplementary conditions and integration into an automation system		
3.	Definition of the load, calculation of the maximum load torque and selection of the motor		
4.	Selection of the SINAMICS Motor Module		
5.	Repetition of steps 3 and 4 for additional axes		
6.	Calculation of the required DC link power and selection of the SINAMICS Line Module		
7.	Selection of the line-side options (main switch, fuses, line filters, etc.)		
8.	Specification of the required control performance and selection of the Control Unit, definition of component cabling		
9.	Definition of other system components (e.g. braking resistors)		
10.	Calculation of the current demand of the 24 V DC supply for the components and specification of the power supplies (SITOP devices, Control Supply Modules)		
11.	Selection of the components for the connection system	1	
12.	Configuration of drive line-up components		
13.	Calculation of the required cable cross sections for power supply and motor connections	]	
14.	Inclusion of mandatory installation clearances	1	

# Clarification of the type of drive

The motor is selected on the basis of the required torque, which is defined by the application, e.g. traveling drives, hoisting drives, test stands, centrifuges, paper and rolling mill drives, feed drives or main spindle drives. Gearboxes to convert motion or to adapt the motor speed and motor torque to the load conditions must also be considered.

As well as the load torque, which is determined by the application, the following mechanical data is among those required to calculate the torque to be provided by the motor:

- Masses to be moved
- Diameter of the drive wheel
- Leadscrew pitch, gear ratios
- Frictional resistance
- Mechanical efficiency
- Traversing paths
- Maximum velocity
- Maximum acceleration and maximum deceleration
- Cycle time

A basic decision must be made as to whether induction, synchronous-reluctance or synchronous motors should be used.

Synchronous motors are the best choice if it is important to have low envelope dimensions, low rotor moment of inertia and therefore maximum dynamic response ("Servo" control type).

Asynchronous motors can be used to increase maximum speeds in the field-weakening range. Asynchronous motors for higher power ratings are also available.

Synchronous-reluctance motors in the medium power range can represent a good alternative configuration to induction motors if higher power ratings with high efficiencies are required.

The following factors are especially important when engineering a drive application:

- The ambient temperatures and the installation altitude of the motors and drive components.
- Heat dissipation from the motors through forced ventilation or water cooling

The motor-specific limiting characteristics provide the basis for defining the motors.

These define the torque or power characteristic versus the speed and take into account the motor limits based on the DC-link voltage of the Power Module or Motor Module. The DC-link voltage is in turn dependent on the supply voltage and, in the case of torque drives, on the type of Line Module.

Other constraints apply when integrating the drives into an automation environment such as SINUMERIK or SIMOTION.

The motor is selected based on the load which is specified by the application. Different characteristic curves must be used for different load events.

6.2 Procedure when engineering

The following operating scenarios have been defined:

- Duty cycle with constant ON period.
- Duty cycles with varying ON period.
- Free duty cycle.

The objective is to identify characteristic torque and speed operating points that can be used as a basis for selecting the motor depending on the load.

# 6.2.2 Specifying the duty cycle

# Duty cycles with constant ON period

For duty cycles with constant ON period, there are specific requirements for the torque characteristic curve as a function of the speed, for example:

M = constant, M ~  $n^2$ , M ~ n or P = constant.

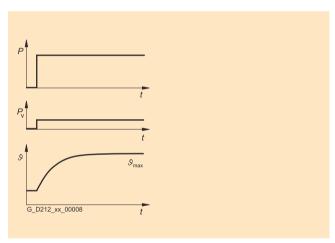


Figure 6-1 S1 duty (continuous operation)

These drives typically operate at a specific operating point. Drives such as these are dimensioned for a base load. The base load torque must lie below the S1 characteristic curve. An overload rating is provided for transient overloads (e.g. during acceleration). The overload current must be calculated relative to the required overload torque. The peak torque must lie below the voltage limiting characteristic.

# Duty cycles with varying ON period

As well as continuous duty (S1), standard intermittent duty types (S6) are also defined for duty cycles with varying ON periods. This is a mode of operation consisting of a series of similar cycles, each one comprising one time period with a constant load and one idle time. There is no pause.

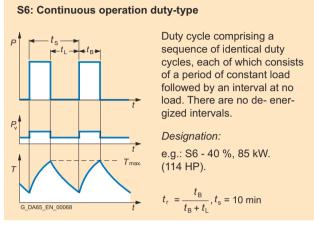


Figure 6-2 S6 duty (continuous duty with intermittent load)

Fixed variables (overload factors) are usually applied for the relative ON period:

- S6 60%
- S6-40%
- S6 25%

The overload factors for the corresponding intermittent duty types (S6) referred to the S1 characteristic (continuous duty) can be found in Chapter "Technical data and characteristics."

For induction motors, in addition to the S1 characteristic, the S6 characteristics are also shown.

see Chapter "Technical data and characteristics" (Page 219)

# Note

# S3 duty

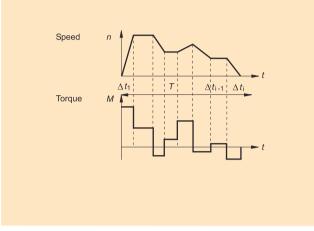
The overload factors for continuous duty with intermittent load (S6) can also be applied for the S3 intermittent duty types (S3-60%, S3-40% or S3-25%) for 1PH8 motors with forced ventilation or water cooling.

### Configuration

6.2 Procedure when engineering

# Free duty cycle

A load duty cycle defines the characteristics of the motor speed and the torque with respect to time.





A load torque is specified for each time period. In addition to the load torque, the average load moment of inertia and motor moment of inertia must be taken into account for acceleration. It may be necessary to take into account a frictional torque that opposes the direction of motion.

#### For gearbox mounting:

In determining the load and acceleration torque required by the motor, the gear ratio and the gear efficiency must be considered. A higher gear ratio increases positioning accuracy in terms of encoder resolution. For any given motor encoder resolution, as the gear ratio increases, so does the resolution of the machine position to be detected.

### Note

#### Duty cycles in the field-weakening range

For duty cycles in the field-weakening range, the drive system must be engineered using the TST engineering tool.

### Permissible motor torque

Once the application has been defined and specified, the maximum motor torque is calculated. Generally, the maximum motor torque is required when accelerating. The load torque and the torque required to accelerate the motor are added.

The maximum motor torque is then verified with the limiting characteristic curves of the motors.

The following criteria must be taken into account when selecting the motor:

- The dynamic limits must be adhered to, i.e. all speed-torque points of the relevant load event must lie below the relevant limiting characteristic curve.
- The thermal limits must be adhered to, i.e. the rms motor torque at the average motor speed resulting from the duty cycle must lie below the S1 characteristic curve (continuous duty). The rms value of the motor current within a duty cycle must be less than the rated motor current.
- In the field-weakening range, the permissible motor torque is restricted by the voltage limit characteristic (stability limit).

### Note

### **Rated pulse frequencies**

The rated motor data is valid only for 4 kHz (booksize or blocksize Motor Modules) or 2 kHz (chassis motor module). Operation of the motors with rated pulse frequencies < 2 kHz is not permitted!

# 6.2.3 Selecting induction motors

# Characteristic curves for asynchronous motors

Speed-power diagrams P = f(n) and speed-torque diagrams M = f(n) for operation with the SINAMICS converter system are described in the motor characteristics, see Chapter "Technical data and characteristics" (Page 219).

Depending on the motor variant, the S1 characteristic (continuous operation) is available from standstill to rated point with maximum possible thermal torque, or passes through the constant-torque range. The power increases in proportion to speed depending on the available torque.

This is then followed by a constant-power range where the field is weakened (field-weakening range). The field-weakening range is limited by the voltage limit.

For induction motors, in addition to the S1 characteristic, the S6 characteristics are also shown, see Chapter "Technical data and characteristics" (Page 219).

### 6.2 Procedure when engineering

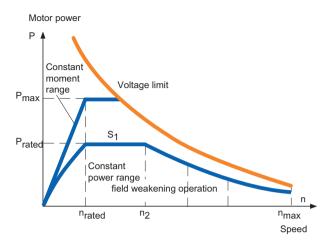


Figure 6-4 Typical speed/power diagram for 1PH8 asynchronous motors

In order that safe, reliable operation is guaranteed even when the line supply voltage fluctuates and the motor parameters vary, a safety margin of at least 10% should always be maintained to the voltage limit at every operating point depending on the type of supply voltage of the Motor Module (inverter) and Infeed Module.

#### Note

For the configuring of main spindle applications for machine tools, the characteristics for the supply voltage "ALM 400 V" include up to two additional ancillary rated points with which extended field-weakening operation can be configured. In this case, the range of constant power starts at the ancillary rated point and ends at the associated point  $n_2$ . The rest of the characteristic is the same as the S1 characteristic in the diagram.

Asynchronous motors have a high overload capacity in the constant power range. The theoretical curve of the maximum permissible overload capacity is shown as a limit in the characteristic diagrams and corresponds to value  $P_{max}$ .

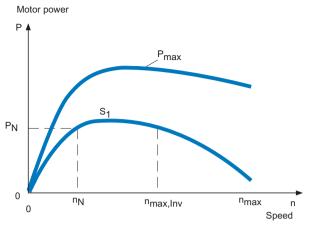
# 6.2.4 Selecting synchronous motors

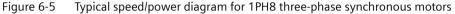
### Characteristic curves for synchronous motors

The S1 characteristic (continuous operation) up to rated point for synchronous motors is similar to the S1 characteristic for asynchronous motors. The S1 characteristic represents the thermally maximum possible continuous torque that can be produced. The S1 power increases with the speed depending on the available torque up to approximately the rated speed.

This is followed by an area with reduced power characterized by increasing iron and friction losses, as well as the increase of negative field voltage with increasing speed due to the constant field of the synchronous rotor.

6.2 Procedure when engineering





### Note

Like those for induction motors, the data sheets for the supply voltage "ALM 400V" include additional ancillary rated points for the configuring of main spindle applications for machine tools. These allow an extended speed range to be configured.

The theoretical curve of the maximum permissible overload capacity is shown as a limit in the characteristic diagrams and corresponds to value  $P_{max}$ .

#### Note

#### Voltage limitation

A SINAMICS Voltage Protection Module (VPM) is required for operation at speeds of  $n_{max,Inv}$  and above. Voltage Protection Modules are available for rated currents up to 200 A.

For further information, please refer to the SINAMICS S120 configuration manuals.

# 6.2.5 Selecting synchronous-reluctance motors

#### Characteristics for synchronous-reluctance motors

For synchronous-reluctance motors, the S1 characteristic (uninterrupted duty) has a response similar to that for synchronous motors. The S1 characteristic represents the thermally maximum possible continuous torque that can be produced.

As a result of the very low rotor losses, in the medium speed range, synchronous-reluctance motors have a higher thermal utilization and when compared to induction motors, have a better efficiency class. When configuring, one of two versions can be selected:

- Efficiency (IE3 to IE5)
- Performance (IE2 to IE4)

6.3 Different rated points for induction motors

As a result of the rotor design, a synchronous-reluctance motor has a restricted fieldweakening range, and when compared to an induction motor, has a lower maximum mechanical speed.

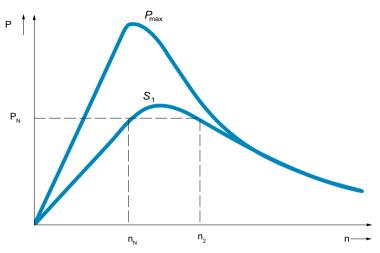


Figure 6-6 Typical speed-power diagram for 1PH8 synchronous-reluctance motors

### Note

When configuring the system, the poorer power factor when compared to induction motors must be taken into account. This results in a higher reactive and/or apparent power at the motor terminals, and as a consequence, the converter must be able to provide a somewhat higher current.

# 6.3 Different rated points for induction motors

All 1PH8 induction motors can be configured based on a total of 4 characteristics and therefore also 4 rated operating points. The rated points are also stamped on the motor nameplate. For correct configuration, the line voltage and the line infeed are relevant for choosing the characteristics and rated points.

Characteristics or- der	Converter sys- tem	Line voltage	Supply infeed	Remarks
1	SINAMICS	3 AC 400 V	Smart/Basic Line Module (SLM/ BLM)	Infeed with uncontrolled Smart/Basic- Mode (converter output voltages up to 380 V)
2	SINAMICS	3 AC 400 V	Active Line Module (ALM)	Infeed with controlled active mode (converter output voltages up to 425 V)
3	SINAMICS	3 AC 480 V	Smart/Basic Line Module (SLM/ BLM)	Infeed with uncontrolled Smart/Basic- Mode (converter output voltages up to 460 V)
4	SINAMICS	3 AC 480 V	Active Line Module (ALM)	Infeed with controlled Active Mode (converter output voltages up to 500 V)

 Table 6-2
 Definition of the characteristics and rated points:

### 6.3 Different rated points for induction motors

### Note

For water-cooled induction motors with shaft heights 180, 225 and 280, the characteristic order "4" is not shown. As a consequence, these motors do not have a fourth rated operating point for "ALM 480 V" on the motor rating plate. When configuring the "ALM 480 V" line infeed, use the data of the characteristic order "3".

Within the characteristic for SINAMICS, 3 AC 400 V, ALM (2nd order, see table), 2 (sometimes also 3) different rated speeds are listed. The rated speeds that are additional to the first rated speed stated are termed ancillary rated points and enable configuration for extended field weakening operation. This type of configuration is often used for main-spindle applications

6.3 Different rated points for induction motors

on machine tools. It is especially important when migrating from old products, such as 1PH4, 1PH7, 1PM4/6 and 1PL6.

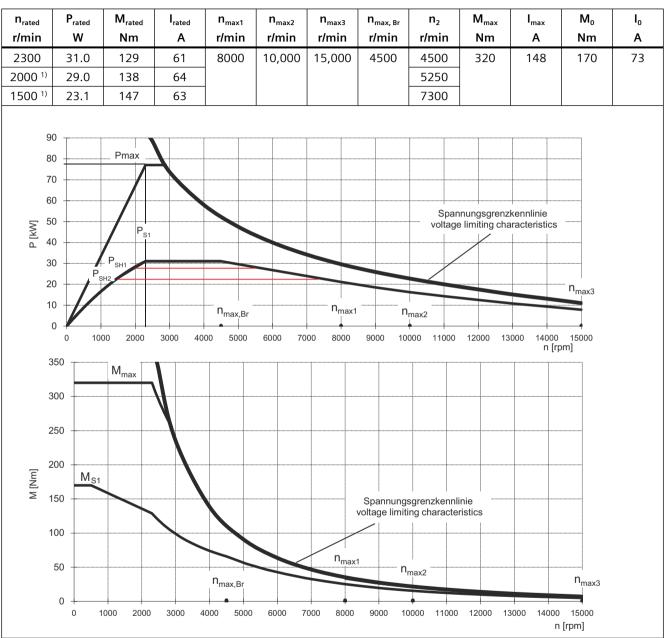


Table 6-3 SINAMICS, 3 AC 400 V, Active Line Module, (ALM), 1PH8135-DDG2D

1) Ancillary rated point that permits configuration for extended field-weakening operation (e.g. main-spindle application for machine tools). In this case, the range of constant power starts at the ancillary rated point and ends at the associated point n2. The rest of the characteristic is the same as the S1 characteristic in the diagram.

## The ancillary rated points have the following advantages for configuration:

- Direct comparability of the power and torque at a rated speed with the old products such as 1PH4, 1PH7, 1PM4/6, and 1PL6. (For the old products, lower rated speeds than for 1PH8 are usually specified.)
- Configuration for an extended field-weakening operation.

#### Note

For the motor data for SINAMICS, only the rated point is stored. The ancillary rated points cannot be entered; they are only required for better configuration.

## Example of migration from 1PH7 to 1PH8:

Motor 1PH7226F	Rated operating point for SINAMICS, 3 AC 400 V, ALM	130 kW, 1500 r/min, 828 Nm
Motor 1PH8226-1_F	Rated operating point for SINAMICS, 3 AC 400 V, ALM	135 kW, 1750 r/min, 737 Nm
	Auxiliary rated operating point for SINAMICS, 3 AC 400 V, ALM	130 kW, 1500 r/min, 828 Nm (comparable to 1PH7226F)

# 6.4 Configuration for SINAMICS G

#### Configuration conditions for 1PH8 induction motors

The 1PH8 induction motors can also be configured for operation on SINAMICS G120, G130, and G150 if certain configuration conditions are met:

- SINAMICS G120 with Power Module PM240-4 (Blocksize) and Control Unit CU240E-2 with firmware release ≥ 4.5 or CU250, vector control (encoderless)
- SINAMICS G130/G150 and Control Unit CU320-2 with firmware version ≥ 4.5, vector control (encoderless or with incremental encoder HTL)
- System restrictions:
- 1PH8 SH 80 to SH 160 Pulse frequency  $\geq$  4 kHz
- 1PH8 SH 180 to SH 280 Pulse frequency  $\ge$  2 kHz
- Maximum permissible output frequency for PM240-2: 240 Hz (means n\_max = 7000 r/min)
- System classification characteristics: Only the characteristics of 1PH8 can be used for the non-regulated infeed.

Characteris- tics order	Converter sys- tem	Line voltage	Supply infeed	Remarks
1	SINAMICS	400 V 3 AC	Smart/Basic Line Module (SLM/BLM)	Infeed with Smart/Basic Mode non-regulated (converter output voltages up to 380 V)
3	SINAMICS	480 V 3 AC	Smart/Basic Line Module (SLM/BLM)	Infeed with Smart/Basic Mode non-regulated (converter output voltages up to 460 V)

6.5 Configuration for 1PH808 Premium Performance

# Configuration conditions for 1PH8 synchronous-reluctance motors

1PH8 synchronous-reluctance motors can also be configured for operation on SINAMICS G120, G130 and G150 if certain configuration conditions are met:

- Power Module PM240-4 (Blocksize)
- Control Unit CU240E-2 from firmware V4.7 SP13 HF2

The system classification was shown using specific characteristics, see Chapter "Technical data and characteristics" (Page 219).

# 6.5 Configuration for 1PH808 Premium Performance

1PH8 motors in the "Premium Performance" variant have been developed specially for spindle drives for "drilling & tapping centers" and are characterized by higher performance data, such as:

- High maximum speeds (24,000 r/min)
- Low intrinsic moment of inertia
- High overload capability

Due to the higher performance data, 1PH8 motors have been harmonized to operate with the SINAMICS S120 Motor Module Booksize, Booksize Combi and the new Booksize Combi Module to facilitate a better configuration.

In the characteristics in Chapter "Technical data and characteristics", in addition to the rated operating point and the necessary pulse frequency, the maximum torques, maximum currents and maximum powers permissible for the specific Motor Module are specified. In this way, different overload requirements can be simply configured. Typical intermittent duties S6-10%, S6-25% and S6-40% for "Drilling & Tapping Center" are also specified in the characteristics.

Abbrevia- tion	Unit	Description
n <sub>N</sub>	r/min	Rated speed
P <sub>N</sub>	kW	Rated power
M <sub>N</sub>	Nm	Rated torque
I <sub>N</sub>	A	Rated current
n <sub>2</sub>	r/min	Maximum operating speed in field-weakening range (limits range of con- stant power)
n <sub>max</sub>	r/min	Maximum permissible speed for the "Premium Performance" version
I <sub>max1</sub>	A	Maximum permissible short-time current at $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{max1}}$ for Motor Module Booksize
I <sub>max2</sub>	A	Maximum permissible short-time current at $\rm M_{max2}$ for Motor Module Booksize Combi
I <sub>max3</sub>	A	Maximum permissible short-time current at $\rm M_{max3}$ for Motor Module Booksize Combi (upgrade)

 Table 6-4
 Explanation of the symbols in the characteristic curves

# 6.5 Configuration for 1PH808 Premium Performance

M <sub>max1</sub>	Nm	Maximum permissible short-time torque for Motor Module Booksize
M <sub>max2</sub>	Nm	Maximum permissible short-time torque for Motor Module Booksize Combi
M <sub>max3</sub>	Nm	Maximum permissible short-time torque for Motor Module Booksize Combi (upgrade)
P <sub>max1</sub>	Nm	Maximum permissible short-time power for Motor Module Booksize
P <sub>max2</sub>	Nm	Maximum permissible short-time power for Motor Module Booksize Combi
P <sub>max3</sub>	Nm	Maximum permissible short-time power for Motor Module Booksize Combi (upgrade)
f <sub>cycle</sub>	kHz	Rated pulse frequency

#### Note

## Parameters must be adapted when commissioning

Motors with the "Premium Performance" bearing version are presently not plug & play components. Even after automatically commissioning the motors with DRIVE-CLiQ, the commissioning engineer must adapt the appropriate parameters.

**Example:** Motors with V and W winding versions (10th position of the Article No.) require an 8 kHz pulse frequency. Presently, this value is not automatically set. Further, for these motors, the current controller must be adapted. These parameters are currently not saved in the DRIVE-CLiQ interface data and must be modified manually by the commissioning engineer. These motors may only be operated with a fast current controller (p1810.11=yes) when connected to the SINAMICS S120 drive system.

Request the commissioning specifications from Technical Support to obtain a precise commissioning procedure (see Chapter "Instructions").

6.5 Configuration for 1PH808 Premium Performance

# **Technical data and characteristics**

The data sheets and characteristics for the various motor frame sizes are available in SIOS.



Induction motors (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/</u>109808406)

Synchronous motors (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109808407</u>)



Reluctance motors (<u>https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/</u>109808408)

# **Preparing for use**

# Transportation

#### Note

#### **Transportation conditions**

Comply with the local national regulations for the transportation of motors.

#### Note

#### Observing the notes

Observe the information on the original packaging and in the operating instructions when transporting and setting down the motor.

# NOTICE

#### Bearing damage during transport

If the customer has already mounted parts, for example coupling, belt pulley, etc., the bearing can be damaged during transport.

• In this case, make sure that the customer uses a rotor locking device.

#### Storage

# Note

Storage

If possible, store the motor in its original packaging.

## NOTICE

#### Frost damage to water-cooled motors

Water-cooled motors can be damaged by frost

• Remove the liquid coolant before storage and blow out the cooling ducts with compressed air.

Preserve the free shaft ends, sealing elements, and flange surfaces with a protective coating.

#### NOTICE

## Seizure damage to bearings

If the motors are stored incorrectly, bearing seizure damage can occur, e.g. brineling, as a result of vibration.

• Comply with the storage conditions.

#### **Storage conditions**

Please observe the warning instructions on the packaging and labels.

Store the motor in a dry, dust-free, and vibration-free indoor storage facility.

Adhere to the following values:

- v<sub>rms</sub> < 0.2 mm/s</li>
- Max. temperatures: -15 °C to 55 °C
- Mean relative humidity < 60 %

#### Note

#### **Replacing roller bearings**

- Even if the motor was stored for more than two years under favorable conditions (i.e. in a dry, dust-free room that is not susceptible to vibration), you must replace the bearings.
- If the motor was stored under unfavorable conditions, you must replace the bearings after approx. 18 months.

#### Note

#### Observing the notes

Observe the information in the operating instructions when storing the motor.

# **Electrical connection**

# 9.1 Permissible line system configurations

In combination with the drive system, the motors are generally approved for operation on TN and TT systems with **grounded neutral** and on IT systems.

In operation on IT systems, the occurrence of a first fault between an active part and ground must be signaled by a monitoring device. In accordance with IEC 60364-4-41 it is recommended that the first fault should be eliminated as quickly as practically possible.

In systems with a **grounded external conductor**, an isolating transformer with grounded neutral (secondary side) must be connected between the line supply and the drive system to protect the motor insulation from excessive stress. The majority of TT systems have a grounded external conductor, so in this case an isolating transformer must be used.

# 9.2 Circuit diagram of the motor

You will find information on the circuit and on connecting the motor winding and the auxiliary equipment (e. g. temperature sensor, anti-condensation heating, etc.) in the circuit diagram. The circuit diagram is in the terminal box for the cable connection.

# 9.3 System integration

# 9.3.1 SINAMICS drive I/O

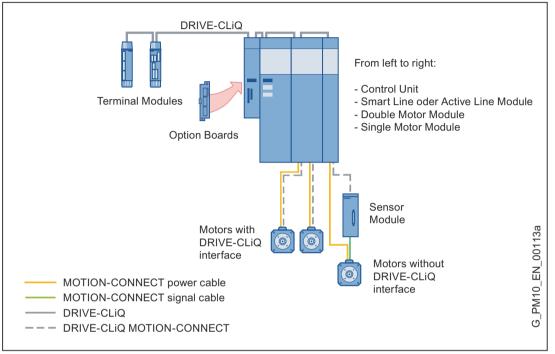


Figure 9-1 SINAMICS S120 system overview

# 9.3.2 Connecting-up information

Comply with the rating plate data (type plate) and circuit diagram in the terminal box. Use sufficiently dimensioned connection cables.

## Note

## System compatibility for connection

System compatibility is only guaranteed if shielded power cables are used and the shield is electrically connected through a large surface area to the metal motor terminal box (using metal EMC cable glands) or using a power connector.

Incorporate the shields in the protective grounding concept. Connect open-circuit conductors, conductors that are not used or electrical cables that can be touched to protective ground. If the brake feeder cables in the SIEMENS cable accessories are not used, then connect the brake conductor cores and shields to the cabinet ground. Open-circuit cables result in capacitive charges.

Use EMC cable glands for fixed cable entries. The cable glands are screwed into the threaded holes of the terminal box.

Close and seal any unused threads using a metal screw plug.

#### Note

#### Connection with aluminum conductors

Aluminum conductors can also be used for motors with higher powers and currents (e.g. shaft height 280). If you are using aluminum conductors, comply with the following additional points:

- Use only cable lugs that are suitable for connecting aluminum conductors.
- Immediately before inserting the aluminum conductor, remove the oxide layer from the contact areas on the conductor and/or the mating piece, by brushing or filing.
- Then grease the contact areas immediately using neutral Vaseline in order to avoid reoxidation.

#### Note

#### Terminal boxes with aluminum connecting bars

For terminal boxes with aluminum connecting bars (type 1XB7), copper (Cu) cables with copper (Cu) cable lugs can also be connected.

## Internal equipotential bonding

The potential equalization between the grounding terminal in the terminal box enclosure and the motor enclosure is established via the terminal box fixing screws. The contact locations underneath the screw/bolt heads are bare and are protected against corrosion.

The standard terminal box cover fixing screws provide adequate equipotential bonding between the terminal box cover and terminal box enclosure.

#### Note

# Higher number of grounding terminals in the terminal box for shaft height 280 (option Q00)

For large transmission powers, symmetrical power cables with a grounding conductor split into 3 are used in some cases. To be able to connect this high number of grounding conductors in the terminal box, with option Q00, for a shaft height 280, a grounding bar with a higher number of terminals can also be mounted, see Chapter "Increased number of grounding terminals in the terminal box (Page 200)".

Shaft height	Terminal box	Quantity	Quantity	
		Connecting terminals	Terminals (grounding)	
		(Grounding)	Option Q00	
SH	Туре	Standard		
280	1XB7712-P	4 x M16	12 x M6	

## Motor and connecting cables

- For the motor cables, use twisted or three-core cables with additional ground conductor. Strip the insulation from the ends of the conductors so that the remaining insulation extends up to the cable lug or terminal.
- Arrange the connecting cables loosely in the terminal box so that the protective conductor has excess length and the insulation of the cable cores cannot be damaged. Ensure that the connecting cables are strain relieved.
- Take special care that the required air clearances are actually maintained:
  - Up to shaft height 160, as a minimum 4.5 mm
  - From shaft height 180, as a minimum 10 mm

# Checking/testing after connecting up

- The inside of the terminal box must be clean and free of any cable pieces.
- All of the terminal screws must be tight.
- The minimum air clearances must be strictly maintained.
- The cable entries must be reliably sealed.

- Unused cable entries must be closed and the screw plugs must be screwed tight.
- All the sealing surfaces must be in a perfect condition.

# Connecting the ground conductor

The ground conductor cross-section must be in full conformance with the installation regulations, e.g. acc. to IEC/EN 60204-1.

For shaft height 225 and shaft height 280, also connect the grounding conductor to the motor end shield. There is a clamping lug 1 for the ground conductor at the designated connection point. This is suitable for connecting multi-conductor cables with cable lugs or ribbon cables with the appropriate conductor terminations.

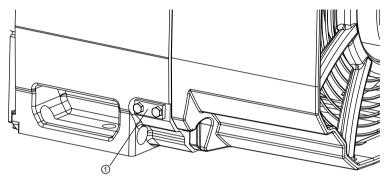


Figure 9-2 Terminal lug for grounding conductor (shaft heights 225 and 280)

When connecting up, ensure that

- the connecting surface is bare and is protected against corrosion using a suitable substance, e.g. acid-free Vaseline
- the flat and spring washers are located under the screw head
- the minimum necessary screw-in depth and the tightening torque for the clamping screw must be maintained

Table 9-1Screw-in depth and tightening torque

Screw	Penetration depth:	Tightening torque	
M8 x 30	> 8 mm	20 Nm	

# 9.3.3 Routing cables in a damp environment

Note

## Routing cables in humid/moist environments

If the motor is mounted in a humid environment, the power and signal cables must be routed as shown in the following figure.

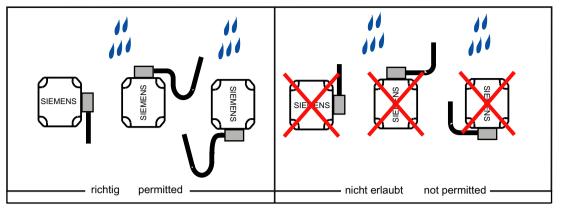


Figure 9-3 Principle of cable routing in a wet/moist environment

# 9.3.4 Power connection



# 

# Thermally damaged connecting cables

If connection cables have a conductor cross section that is too small for the application, the connection cables can be thermally damaged. This can result in personal injury and damage to property due to electric shock and fire hazard.

• Carefully observe the current which the motor draws for your particular application! Adequately dimension the connecting cables according to IEC 60204-1 or IEC 60364-5-52.

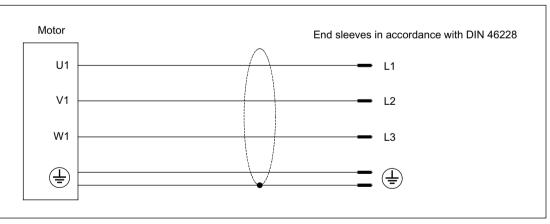


Figure 9-4 Power cable

# Terminal box connection

The type designation of the mounted terminal box as well as the details on the power connection for the line supply cables can be taken from the following table. A circuit diagram to connect the motor winding is provided in the terminal box when the motors are shipped.

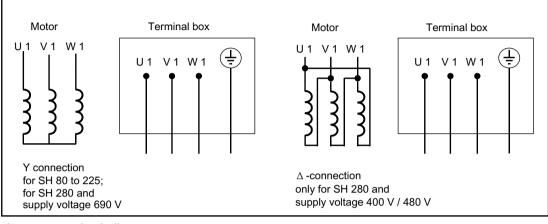


Figure 9-5 Circuit diagram

## Note

# Connecting temperature sensors and PTC thermistors

The spare temperature sensor (option A25 for shaft heights 80 to 160, standard from shaft height 180 and higher) and the PTC thermistor circuit for alarm/trip (option A12) are connected to a signal terminal block in the terminal box.

# Star/delta connection in the terminal box (SH80 to SH160)

The star/delta connection can be implemented using an external contactor circuit or as permanent setting in the terminal box.

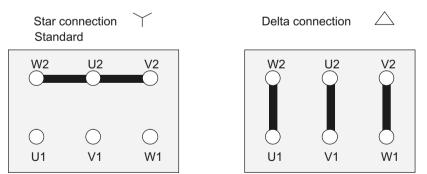


Figure 9-6 Fixed star/delta connection in the terminal box

# Current-carrying capacity for power and signal cables

The current carrying capacity of PVC/PUR-insulated copper cables is specified for routing types B1, B2, C and E under continuous operating conditions in the table with reference to an ambient air temperature of 40 °C. For other ambient temperatures, the values must be corrected by the factors from the table of derating factors.

Cross section	Current-car	Current-carrying capacity rms; AC 50/60 Hz or DC for routing type				
mm <sup>2</sup>	B1	B2	С	E		
	A	Α	A	A		
Electronics (accord	ling to EN 60204-1	)				
0.20	-	4.3	4.4	4.4		
0.50	-	7.5	7.5	7.8		
0.75	-	9	9.5	10		
Power (according t	o EN 60204-1)	·	·			
0.75	8.6	8.5	9.8	10.4		
1.00	10.3	10.1	11.7	12.4		
1.50	13.5	13.1	15.2	16.1		
2.50	18.3	17.4	21	22		
4	24	23	28	30		
6	31	30	36	37		
10	44	40	50	52		
16	59	54	66	70		
25	77	70	84	88		
35	96	86	104	110		
50	117	103	125	133		
70	149	130	160	171		
95	180	165	194	207		
120	208	179	225	240		
Power (according t	o IEC 60364-5-52)					
150	239 <sup>1)</sup>	2061)	259 <sup>1)</sup>	276 <sup>1)</sup>		
185	274 <sup>1)</sup>	235 <sup>1)</sup>	296 <sup>1)</sup>	315 <sup>1)</sup>		
> 185	Values must	be taken from the s	standard			

 Table 9-2
 Cable cross section and current-carrying capacity

<sup>1)</sup> Extrapolated values

Table 9-3	Derating factors for power and signal cables
-----------	--

Ambient air temperature	Derating factor according to EN 60204-1, Table D1		
°C			
30	1.15		
35	1.08		
40	1.00		
45	0.91		

Ambient air temperature	Derating factor according to EN 60204-1, Table D1
°C	
50	0.82
55	0.71
60	0.58

# Assignment, terminal boxes and max. cross-sections

Table 9-4	Terminal box data

Terminal box type	Shaft height	Cable entry (power)	Cable entry (external sig- nals)	Outer cable di- ameter, max. mm <sup>2)</sup>	Number of main ter- minals	Max. cross- section per terminal mm <sup>2</sup>	Max. current per terminal A <sup>3)</sup>
gk803	SH80	1 x M25 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	20	Phases: 3 x M5 Grounding: 2 x M5	1 x 10	52
gk806	SH80	1 x M25 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	20	Phases: 6 x M5 Grounding: 2 x M5	1 x 10	52
gk813	SH100	1 x M32 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	24.2	Phases: 3 x M5 Grounding: 2 x M5	1 x 16	70
gk823	SH100	1 x M32 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	24.2	Phases: 3 x M5 Grounding: 2 x M5	1 x 16	70
gk826	SH100	1 x M32 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	24.2	Phases: 6 x M5 Grounding: 2 x M5	1 x 10	52
gk833	SH132	1 x M40 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	32	Phases: 3 x M6 Grounding: 2 x M6	1 x 35	110
gk843	SH132	1 x M50 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	38	Phases: 3 x M6 Grounding: 2 x M6	1 x 50	133
gk846	SH132	1 x M50 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	38	Phases: 6 x M6 Grounding: 2 x M6	1 x 25	88
gk863	SH160	1 x M50 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	38	Phases: 3 x M6 Grounding: 2 x M6	1 x 50	133
gk873	SH160	1 x M63 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	42.6	Phases: 3 x M6 Grounding: 2 x M6	1 x 50	133
gk874	SH160	1 x M63 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>1)</sup>	42.6	Phases: 3 x M10 Grounding: 2 x M6	2 x 70	240
1XB7322- P05	SH180 to SH280	2 x M50 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>4)</sup>	38	Phases: 3 x M12 Grounding: 4 X M6e	2 x 50	210
1XB7422- P06	SH180 to SH280	2 x M63 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>4)</sup>	53	Phases: 3 x M12 Grounding: 4 x M8	2 x 70	270

Terminal box type	Shaft height	Cable entry (power)	Cable entry (external sig- nals)	Outer cable di- ameter, max. mm <sup>2)</sup>	Number of main ter- minals	Max. cross- section per terminal mm <sup>2</sup>	Max. current per terminal A <sup>3)</sup>
1XB7700- P02	SH225 and SH280	3 x M75 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>4)</sup>	68	Phases: 3 x 2 x M12 Grounding: 3 x clamping plate	3 x 150	700
1XB7712- P03	SH225 and SH280	4 x M75 x 1.5	1 x M16 x 1.5 <sup>4)</sup>	68	Phases: 3 x 4 x M16 Grounding: 4 x M16	4 x 185	1150

<sup>1)</sup> M16 x 1.5 thread arranged at 90° angle to signal connection; thread only with options A12, A25 and encoder version A (without encoder)

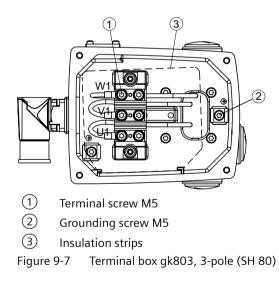
- <sup>2)</sup> Depending on the version of metric cable gland (based on the MOTION-CONNECT cable type and cable glands from HUGRO or from AGRO)
- <sup>3)</sup> Current-carrying capacity based on EN 60204-1 and IEC 60364-5-52, routing type E
- <sup>4)</sup> M16 x 1.5 thread arranged opposite to the signal connection (lateral to the cable entry plate); thread only for option A12 and encoder version A (without encoder)

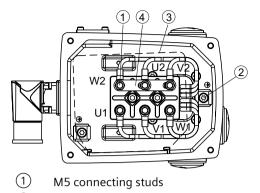
#### Note

## Terminal box type 1XB7700-P02

For cable entry, 3 cable glands can only be fit in if cable glands from AGRO or HUGRO are used. Cable glands from Pflitsch or Lapp, for example, are larger and it is not possible to fit 3 of them into the available space.

# Terminal box design



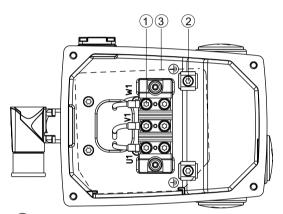


2 Grounding screw M5

③ Insulation strips

(4) Jumper

Figure 9-8 Terminal box gk806, 6-pole (SH 80) (can be changed over between star and delta)

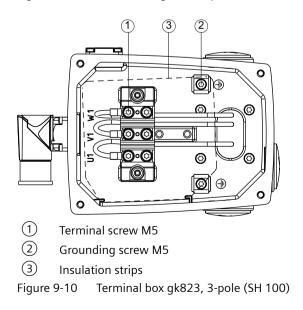


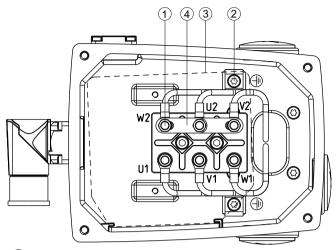
1 Terminal screw M5

2 Grounding screw M5

③ Insulation strips

Figure 9-9 Terminal box gk813, 3-pole (SH 100)





1 Terminal screw M5

2 Grounding screw M5

③ Insulation strips

4 Jumper

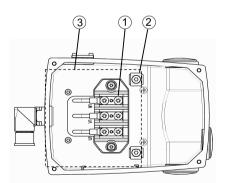
Figure 9-11 Terminal box gk826, 6-pole (SH 100) (can be changed over between star and delta)

# Note

# Star/delta connection

A star/delta connection is implemented using an external contactor circuit or as a fixed configuration in terminal box gk806 for SH 80 and in terminal box gk826 for SH 100.

Standard configuration: Star connection via jumpers

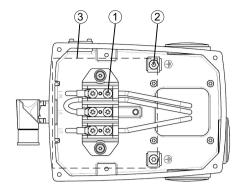


1 Terminal screw M6

2 M6 grounding screw

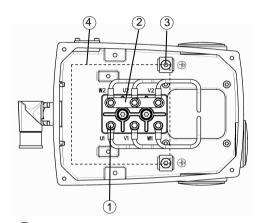
③ Insulation strips

Figure 9-12 Terminal box gk833 (SH 132) and gk863 (SH 160), 3-pole



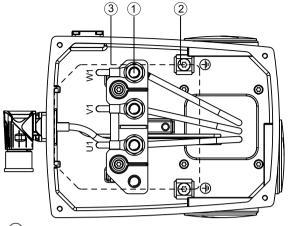
- 1 Terminal screw M6
- 2 M6 grounding screw
- ③ Insulation strips

Figure 9-13 Terminal box gk843 (SH 132) and gk873 (SH 160), 3-pole

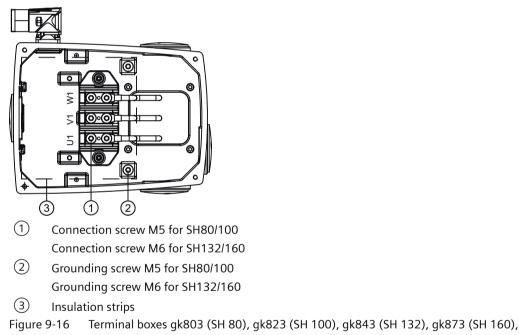


- 1 Terminal stud M6
- 2 Jumper
- ③ M6 grounding screw
- (4) Insulation strips

Figure 9-14 Terminal box gk846 (SH 132) and gk876 (SH 160), 6-pole (can be changed over between star and delta)



- 1 Terminal screw M10
- 2 M6 grounding screw
- ③ Insulation strips
- Figure 9-15 Terminal box gk874 (SH 132 and SH 160), 3-pole (only for synchronous motors and synchronous-reluctance motors)



3-pole, cable entry DE (drive end)

#### Note

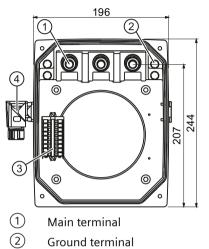
# Cable exit direction DE

The motor with the cable exit direction DE has a "D" in the 15th position of the Article No.

#### Note

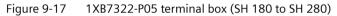
The internal motor cables are mounted on the NDE side on the 3-pole terminal board.

Terminal box gk874 is not possible.



③ Signal connection terminal

(4) Signal connection



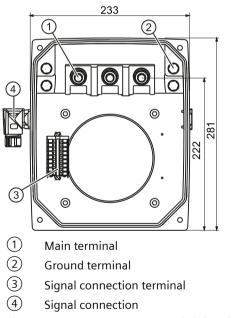
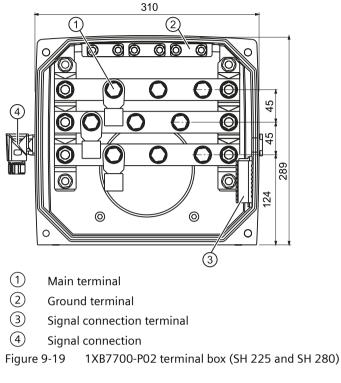
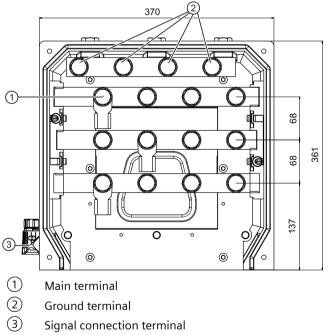


Figure 9-18 1XB7422-P06 terminal box (SH 180 to SH 280)







#### Note

#### Signal connection for special orders

The signal connection may differ from the standard layout in the case of special orders. For the device version without speed encoder, there is an M16 x 1.5 connection thread.

#### Power connector connection

- Use connector size 1.5.
- Assign the connector as shown in the "Power connector 1.5" diagram. Connect the protective conductor.

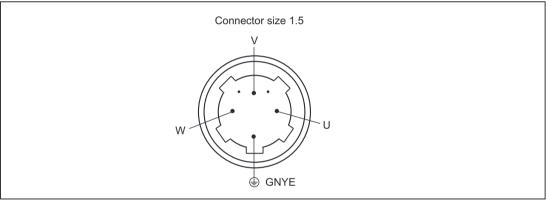


Figure 9-21 Power connector, size 1.5 (view of connector pins)

Connector	Rotation range	Maximum torque
Connector size 1.5	270°	20 Nm

# Note

# Rotating the connectors

- The permissible rotation range must not be exceeded.
- In order to guarantee the degree of protection, max. 10 revolutions are permissible.
- Connectors should be rotated using the matching mating connector located on the connector thread. Only rotate the Sensor Module by hand. The use of pipe wrenches, hammers, or similar is not permitted.

- Use connector size 3.
- Assign the connector as shown in the "Power connector 3" diagram. Connect the protective conductor.

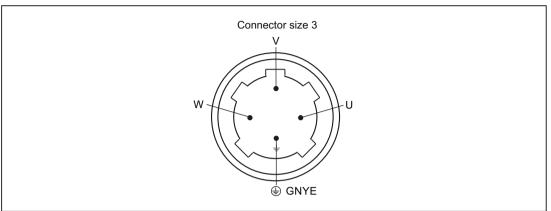


Figure 9-22 Power connector, size 3 (looking onto the connector pins)

# Star/delta connection via an external contactor circuit

When induction motors (SH 80 to SH 160) are used, it is possible to select one of the following operating modes:

- Star connection
- Delta connection

# Circuit to implement star-delta switchover

For induction motors, all six connection leads of the three winding phases are fed out to be able to select the various operating modes.

The changeover is carried out outside the spindle using switching devices and equipment that are not included with the motor spindle (i.e. these devices are not included in the scope of delivery).

#### Note

#### Star/delta connection

When changing over the circuit configuration (star-delta), the appropriate data set for the closed-loop motor control must also be changed-over.

A changeover may only be made when the spindle is in a no-load condition and with the power module pulses inhibited.

For information about the circuit to implement the star-delta changeover, refer to the following diagram and SINAMICS S120 Function Manual (FH1).

# Using the star connection

The star connection offers some advantages at low speeds. The maximum torque in the star connection is approximately twice as high as in the delta connection. However, due to the higher reactive power requirement of the star connection, the available torque in the uppermost speed range is significantly restricted. This means that the star connection should only be activated when machining which requires a **high torque in the lower speed range**. An example of such a machining operation is roughing.

# Using the delta connection

Although the delta connection provides, in the lower speed range, a lower maximum torque than the star connection, the torque remains available up to high speeds. This means that the delta connection should be activated for **all machining operations which are carried out in the medium and high speed ranges**.

# Connection diagram for Y/D changeover

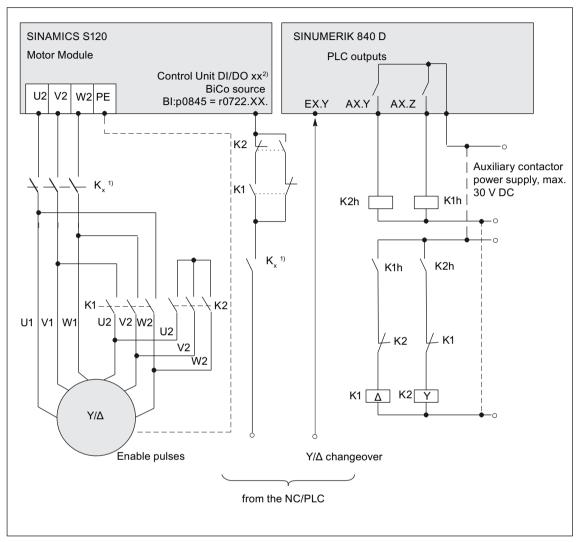


Figure 9-23 Connection diagram for Y/D changeover with SINAMICS

- <sup>1)</sup> Safe operating stop cannot be guaranteed by simply opening K1 and K2. Therefore, for safety reasons there should be electrical isolation provided by contactor K<sub>x</sub>. This contactor may only be switched-in the no-current condition, i.e. the pulse enable must be withdrawn 40 ms before the contactor is opened (de-energized).
- <sup>2)</sup> Terminal X3 of the voltage limiting module VPM should be wired to a digital input of the Control Unit on which the assigned 1PH8 motor spindle is also controlled. For the case that several VPMs are used, each terminal must be wired to a separate digital input of the relevant Control Unit.

If an armature short-circuit occurs (terminal X3 has opened), the pulses of the relevant axis must be inhibited. To achieve this, the digital input used is interconnected to the control bit OFF2 (pulse inhibit) via p0845 = r0722.XX.

Further information can be found in the SINAMICS S120 Function Manual.

# 9.3.5 External fan

Table 9-5Connected loads for external fans
--

Shaft height SH	Fan motor: Maxim A	Air flow direc- tion		
Forced ventila- tion	230 V 1 AC/50 Hz (±10 %)	230 V 1 AC/60 Hz (±10 %)	265 V 1 AC/60 Hz (±10 %)	
80	0.33	0.25	0.32	NDE> DE
	0.20	0.16	0.19	DE> NDE
Forced ventila- tion	3-ph. 400 VAC / 50 Hz (±10 %)	400 V 3 AC/60 Hz (±10 %)	480 V 3 AC/60 Hz (±10 %)	
100	0.08	0.07	0.11	NDE> DE
	0.10	0.08	0.11	DE> NDE
132	0.11	0.13	0.13	NDE> DE
	0.10	0.12	0.12	DE> NDE
160	0.16	0.21	0.21	NDE> DE
	0.16	0.21	0.21	DE> NDE
Forced ventila- tion (EC fan) Standard	1-ph. 200 277 VA	AC / 50 Hz, 60 Hz (±10	%)	
180	1.1 1.3			NDE> DE DE> NDE
225	2.0 2.3			NDE> DE DE> NDE
Forced ventila- tion (EC fan)	3 AC 380 V 480 V 50 Hz, 60 Hz (±10 %	3 AC 380 V 480 V (-5 %/+10 %)		
Option: L76				
180	0.44 0.5			NDE> DE DE> NDE
225	0.75 0.9	NDE> DE DE> NDE		
Forced ventila- tion (EC fan) Standard	3 AC 380 V 480 V 50 Hz, 60 Hz (±10 %			
280	0.75 0.9			NDE> DE DE> NDE

## Note

For EC fans, for shaft height 180 and shaft height 280, as a result of the electronic input circuitry, the current drawn can briefly reach four times the specified current.

# **Recommended connection**

Connect the separately driven fan via the terminal box of the separately driven fan or optionally via a power connector. Implement operation of the fans via the motor circuit breaker. A simple conductor protection is sufficient for the EC fans.

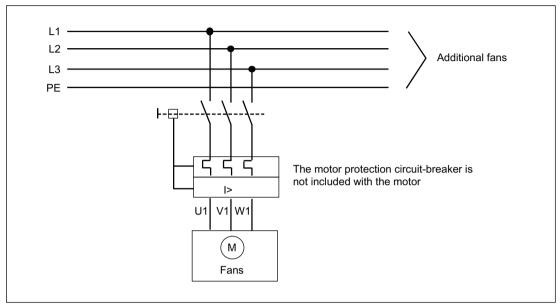


Figure 9-24 Recommended connection

# Note

#### Single-phase fan connection

If you use a 3-pole circuit breaker for a 1-phase fan connection for shaft height 80, then you must connect the 3 current paths in series (see the diagram).

If only one current path would be used, many circuit breakers would trip too early because they often also monitor balanced load or voltage on the 3 line conductors. You must determine whether this circuit is permissible with electronic motor circuit breakers on a case-by-case basis from the product data sheets of the specific manufacturer.

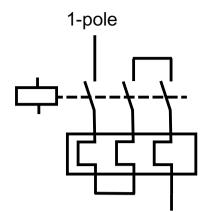


Figure 9-25 Single-phase connection

# Connection via the terminal box

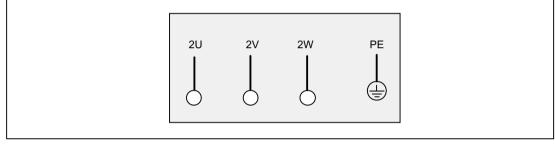


Figure 9-26 Connecting the separately driven fan terminal box, shaft height 100 up to shaft height 160

# Connection via the power connector

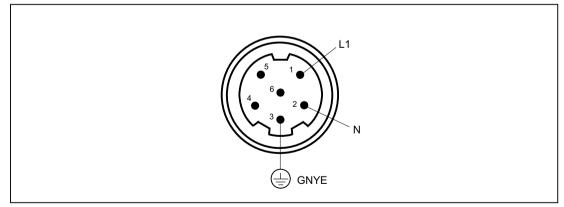


Figure 9-27 Connection, separately driven fan, shaft height 80

#### Note

For 1PH8 motors, shaft height 80, always switch on the separately driven fan via a power connector, even if the motor power connection is established via a terminal box.

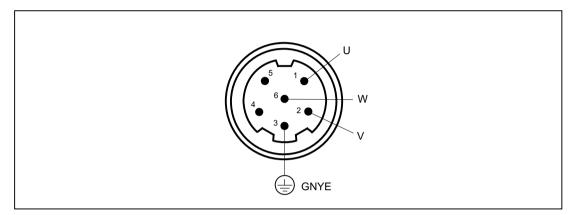


Figure 9-28 Connecting the separately driven fan, shaft height 100 up to shaft height 132

#### Note

#### Rotating the connectors

- Do not exceed the permissible rotation range.
- In order to guarantee the degree of protection, max. 10 revolutions are permissible.
- When turning, only use the mating connector that matches the connector thread. Only rotate Sensor Modules by hand. Do not use any tools such as pipe wrench, hammer or similar tool.

Connector	Rotation range	Maximum rotation torque	
Connector size 1.0	270°	12 Nm	

#### Note

## Scope of delivery

The mating connector is not included in the scope of delivery.

Article number mating connector size 1 (with full thread) 6FX2003-0LU00

#### Note

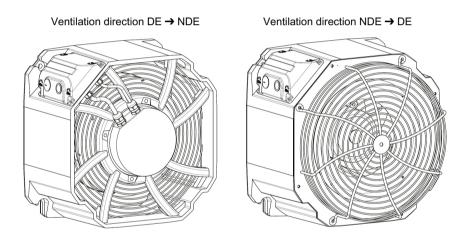
#### **Prefabricated cables**

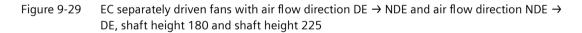
Order pre-assembled cables with the following Article No.:  $6FX\square002-5CG01-\square\square\square0$ 

# EC external fan for shaft heights 180 to 280

EC external fans are installed in forced ventilated motors of the 1PH8 series. These are especially designed fan units for this motor series, with a permanently set operating speed.

EC external fans contain high-efficiency electronically commutated motors with permanent magnets. They are speed-controlled by an integrated controller. The EC external fans meet the general requirements of EN 61800-2 for variable-speed electrical drives and are designed for single-quadrant operation.





#### External fans with filter unit (option G14)

For the version with air flow direction NDE  $\rightarrow$  DE, you can optionally add a filter unit (option G14). The filter corresponds to DIN EN 779 of filter class G3.

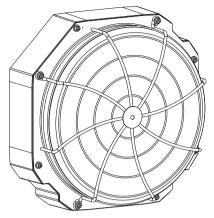


Figure 9-30 EC separately driven fans with air flow direction NDE  $\rightarrow$  DE and filter unit, shaft height 180 and shaft height 225

# Connecting a separately driven fan

Connect the separately driven fan in the separately driven fan terminal box. You can rotate the separately driven fan; for shaft heights 180 and 225, through 90° and for shaft height 280, through 180°.

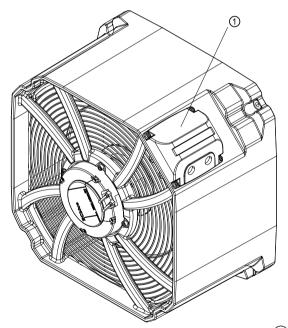


Figure 9-31 Separately driven fan terminal box 1 (schematic representation shaft height 180)



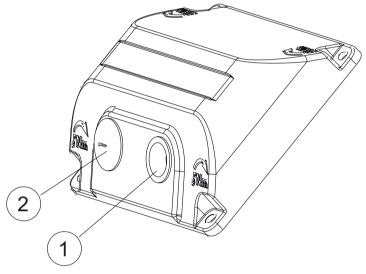
# \Lambda warning

Short-circuit due to standing water, shaft height 180 and shaft height 225

If you rotate the separately driven fan through 90°, it is not permissible that the cable outlet faces upward. Water that accumulates at the cable glands can result in a short circuit.

• Rotate the terminal box cover of the separately driven fan through 180°.

# Connection at the terminal box



- 1 M20 cable entry for line power connection
- 2 M20 cable entry for control (optional)

Figure 9-32 Cover of the terminal box, shaft height 180 and shaft height 225

In the delivery condition, the two cable entries are sealed.

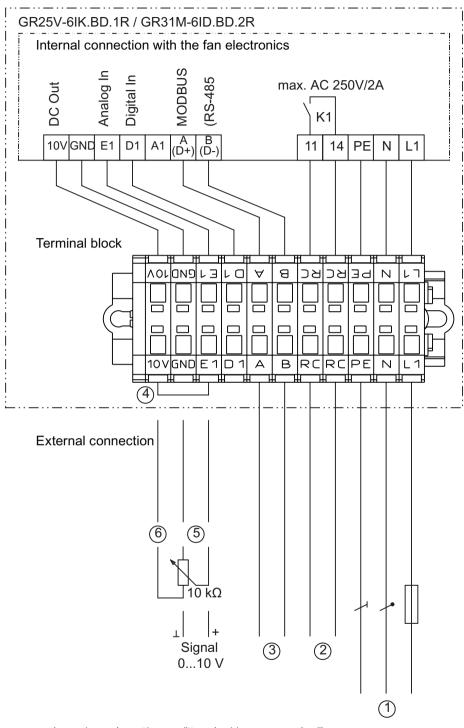
- Cable entry ① is intended for the line supply connection, and is therefore only sealed with a plug.
- Cable entry ② is intended for the optional control connection and is fitted with a screw plug.

# Note

# Cable gland

The cable glands are not included in the scope of supply. Select suitable cable glands to connect the cable. The general connection instructions must be observed. Ensure that there is permanent leak tightness between the cable gland and the terminal box and cable.

# Wiring diagram



- 1 Line voltage (see Chapter "Terminal box connection")
- 2 Relay output (K1) for alarm
- 3 MODBUS (RS-485) interface (only accessible for Siemens Service)
- 4 Factory-inserted jumper between 10 V and E1 for 100 % operating speed
- 5 Input for speed setting via 0...10 V signal or potentiometer ( $Ri > 100 k\Omega$ )

6 10 V DC power supply (I<sub>max</sub> 50 mA)

#### Note

#### **Terminal block**

The terminal block is led out with spring-loaded terminals. A cable cross-section of 0.08 up to 1.5 mm<sup>2</sup> can be connected to the terminals. A cable cross-section of 1.5 mm<sup>2</sup> is recommended.

#### Note

#### Relay output (K1)

An external fault message can be output via the isolated contact of the integrated relay. During operation, the relay picks up, i.e. connections "11" and "14" are jumpered. If a fault occurs, the relay drops out (contact load, max. 250 V AC 2 A).

#### Note

#### Factory-inserted jumper between 10 V and E1

When delivered, a jumper is inserted between the "10 V" power supply and analog input "E1." 100 % of the speed is achieved during operation in this way.

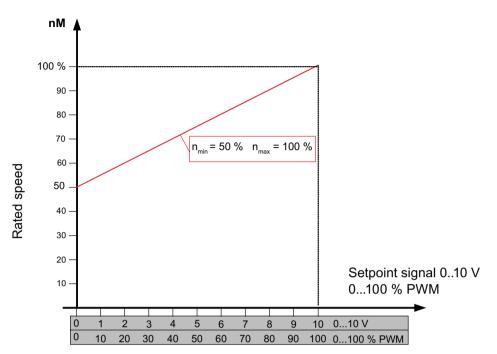
After the line voltage has been switched on and after a run up time of approx. 20 seconds, the fan is operated at a constant 100 % speed (rated speed).

#### Note

#### Speed control via setting signal

Adjust the cooling depending on the duty cycle and the utilization level of the 1PH8 motor. Remove the jumper inserted in the factory between "10 V" and "E1". The fan speed can be set in the range 50 ...100 % using a setpoint signal (0...10 V).

Contact Siemens Technical Support for additional information and support.



#### Diagram of control via an external setting signal

#### NOTICE

#### Removing the factory-mounted jumper

The 1PH8 motor can overheat if the external EC fan is operated at low fan speeds as a result of the setpoint signal it receives.

- Monitor the motor using the integrated temperature sensors.
- Integrate the temperature monitoring into the interlocking circuit.

If the company operating the plant or system removes the jumper (which was inserted in the factory), that company becomes responsible for the functional safety of the drive, especially if the safety instructions are not complied with.

#### Line connection: Fuse protection

The EC external fans have integrated overload protection, making an external motor protection device (e.g. motor circuit breaker) unnecessary. A simple conductor protection is sufficient.

Simple conductor protection with a fuse or MCB:

Fuse		МСВ	Conductor cross section	Conductor cross section
VDE	UL	VDE	mm <sup>2</sup>	*AWG
16 A	15 A	C16A	1.5	16

(\* AWG = American Wire Gauge)

#### **Residual-current protective device**

Only RCDs that are sensitive to universal current (type B or B+) are permissible. Personal protection is not possible if the device is operated with RCDs, as is also the case for converters.

When the power supply of the device is switched on, charging current pulses can occur due to the capacitors. In the integrated EMC filter, this can cause the RCDs to trip instantaneously. We recommend residual-current operated circuit breakers with a tripping threshold of 300 mA and delayed tripping (super-resistant, characteristic K).

# Use in IT systems



# WARNING Risk of electric current

In an IT system, the neutral point of the voltage supply is not grounded. If a short-circuit occurs between a phase (e.g. "L1") and the protective conductor "PE", then the protective conductor is at phase potential.

Under no circumstances may a voltage higher than the specified line voltage of the device be applied between the line connection and the protective conductor "PE".

1-phase EC separately driven fans can be used on an IT line system. On 3-phase IT line systems, follow the bullet points for use During a ground fault of an unused line phase, the potential relative to "PE" must not be higher than the specified line voltage of the device (at neither of the two supply connections).

To ensure fault-free operation on the IT line system, connect the "GND" potential of the control connections to the protective conductor potential.

The following consequences of this connection must be observed for the control connections (except for relay contacts):

1. Only connect using cables that are suitable for the line voltage and environment.

2. Only connect via suitable buffer stages.

# 9.3.6 Signal connection

DRIVE-CLiQ is the preferred method for connecting the encoder systems to SINAMICS.

Motors with a DRIVE-CLiQ interface can be ordered for this purpose. Motors with a DRIVE-CLiQ interface can be directly connected to the associated motor module via the available MOTION-CONNECT DRIVE-CLiQ cables. The MOTION-CONNECT DRIVE-CLiQ cable is connected to the motor in degree of protection IP67. The DRIVE-CLiQ interface supplies power to the motor encoder via the integrated 24 VDC supply and transfers the motor encoder and temperature signals and the electronic type plate data, e.g. a unique

identification number, rating data (voltage, current, torque) to the control unit. The MOTION-CONNECT DRIVE-CLiQ cable is used universally for connecting the various encoder types. These motors simplify commissioning and diagnostics, as the motor and encoder type are identified automatically.

# Encoder connection on motors with DRIVE-CLiQ

Motors with DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces can be directly connected to the corresponding Motor Module via the available MOTION-CONNECT DRIVE-CLiQ cables. This data is transferred directly to the Control Unit.

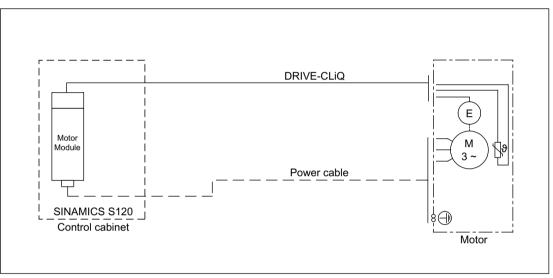


Figure 9-33 Encoder connection on motors with DRIVE-CLiQ

# Cables on motors with DRIVE-CLiQ

With DRIVE-CLiQ, the same cable is used for all encoder types. Only pre-assembled cables from Siemens (MOTION-CONNECT) may be used.

Table 9-6Pre-assembled cable

6FX	□ <b>002</b> - □ <b>DC</b> □□ -	□□□ 0
	$\downarrow$	$\downarrow \uparrow \uparrow$
	$\downarrow$	Length
	5 MOTION-CON- NECT®500	max. cable length 100 m
	8 MOTION-CON- NECT®800	max. cable length 50 m

For other technical data and length code, refer to Catalog, Chapter "MOTION-CONNECT connection system"

# Encoder connection on motors without DRIVE-CLiQ

If a motor is not equipped with a DRIVE-CLiQ interface, the speed encoder and temperature sensor are connected via a signal connector.

Motors that are not equipped with DRIVE-CLiQ require a Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (SMC) or a Sensor Module External (SME) when operated with SINAMICS S120. The motor is connected to the SMC or the SME via the signal cable. The SMC or SME is connected to the Motor Module via a MOTION-CONNECT DRIVE-CLiQ cable.

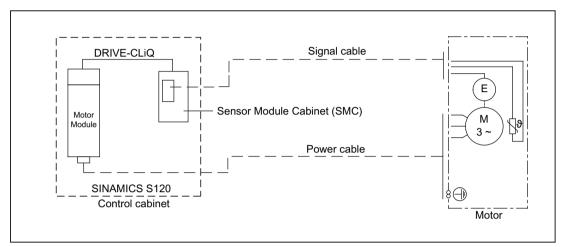


Figure 9-34 Encoder connection on motors without DRIVE-CLiQ

# Cables on motors without DRIVE-CLiQ

Prefabricated cables from Siemens (MOTION-CONNECT) must be used. These offer many advantages over self-assembled cables in terms of operational reliability, quality and availability.

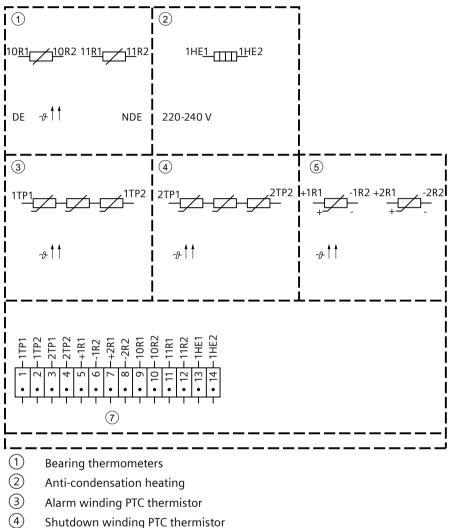
For technical data and length code, see Catalog, Chapter "MOTION-CONNECT connection system".

# Maximum assignment of signal terminal strips in the terminal box

The following signals can be connected to the signal terminal strip:

- Temperature sensor (+1R1; -1R2): For an additional reserve temperature sensor, +1R1 and -1R2 are connected to the signal terminal strip and (for motors with encoder) also wired to the signal connector.
- Reserve-temperature sensor (+2R1, -2R2):
  - Shaft height 80-160: Option A25
  - Shaft height 180-280: Standard
- Additional PTC thermistor circuit for alarm and trip (1TP1, 1TP2, 2TP1, 2TP2): Option A12

- Pt100 resistance thermometer to monitor rolling bearings (10R1, 10R2, 11R1, 11R2): Shaft height 180-280: Option A72
- Connection of the anti-condensation heating (1HE1, 1HE2): Shaft height 180-280: Option K45



- 5 Pt1000 winding temperature sensor
- 6 Terminal strip
- Figure 9-35 Assignment\_signal terminal strip\_terminal box

# **Dimension drawings**

# **10.1 SIEMENS** Product Configurator

The SIEMENS Product Configurator supports you when configuring your drive.

You will find the following quickly and easily in the SIEMENS Product Configurator

- Technical data
- Characteristics
- dimension drawings
- 2D/3D CAD data

The SIEMENS Product Configurator supports you when creating system documentation regarding project-specific information.

#### Note

The 3D model in the SIEMENS Product Configurator is a simplified representation that does not show every detail.

You can find further information on the Internet at SIEMENS Product Configurator (<u>www.siemens.com/SPC</u>):

# **Recency of dimensional drawings**

# Note

#### **Changing motor dimensions**

Siemens reserves the right to change the dimensions of the motors as part of mechanical design improvements without prior notice. This means that dimensional drawings can become out of date.

You can request free of charge current dimension drawings from Technical Support or your local sales partner.

10.1 SIEMENS Product Configurator

# Appendix

# A.1 Description of terms

#### Rated torque M<sub>N</sub>

The rated torque is the torque that is mechanically available at the shaft and can be thermally provided corresponding to the specified operating mode (duty type) according to IEC 60034-1.

#### Rated speed n<sub>N</sub>

This is the speed for which the rated power and the rated torque are defined corresponding to the specified operating mode (duty type) according to IEC 60034-1.

# Rated voltage $V_N$

Voltage between two motor phases for which the rating data ( $P_N$ ,  $n_N$ , etc.) is defined. The rated voltage definition takes into account magnetic (iron saturation) and thermal factors.

#### Rated current I<sub>N</sub>

This is the current (rms phase value) that flows at the rated speed and rated torque and can be thermally provided according to the specified operating mode (duty type) according to IEC 60034-1.

#### Rated frequency f<sub>N</sub>

Frequency required to obtain the performance ratings ( $P_N$ ,  $n_N$ , etc.).

# Rated power P<sub>N</sub>

The rated power is the power that is mechanically available at the shaft and can be thermally provided corresponding to the specified operating mode (duty type) according to IEC 60034-1.

#### Speed for field weakening with constant power n<sub>2</sub>

Maximum achievable speed at rated power corresponding to the specified operating mode (duty type) according to IEC 60034-1.

#### No-load current I<sub>u</sub>

This is the current (rms phase current) that is required in order to operate the motor under noload conditions at rated speed without load torque. The no-load current defines the motor magnetization in the base speed range (low speed at the start of field weakening).

#### A.1 Description of terms

# Maximum speed n<sub>max</sub>

The maximum permissible speed  $n_{\rm max}$  is determined by mechanical factors. The maximum speed  $n_{\rm max}$  must not be exceeded.

## NOTICE

#### Motor damage when the maximum speed is exceeded

The maximum speed  $n_{max}$  is the highest permissible operating speed. The maximum speed  $n_{max}$  is stamped on the rating plate (nameplate).

The motor can be damaged if operated at inadmissible speeds.

• Ensure that the maximum permissible speed is not exceeded. Realize this using a suitable control system or activate the speed monitoring function in the drive.

If  $n_{s1} < n_{max}$ , the motor must not be operated at  $n_{max}$  continuously. Unless a different duty cycle (duty cycle duration 10 minutes) is specified, the speed must be reduced as stated below:

t<sub>1</sub>: 1 min---n<sub>1</sub>= 0 r/min<sup>;</sup> t<sub>2</sub>: 6 min---n<sub>2</sub>= 2/3 n<sub>max</sub>; t<sub>3</sub>: 3 min---n<sub>3</sub>= n<sub>max</sub>

### Maximum torque M<sub>max</sub>

Torque which is briefly available for dynamic operations (e.g. when accelerating).

#### Max. current I<sub>max</sub>

This is the current (rms phase value) produced at rated speed ( $n_{rated}$ ) and maximum torque ( $M_{max}$ ).

# S1 duty (continuous operation)

Operation with a constant load, the duration of which is sufficient that the motor goes into a thermal steady-state condition.

#### S6 duty (intermittent operation)

Operation which comprises a sequence of identical duty cycles; each of these duty cycles comprises a time with constant motor load and a no-load time. Unless otherwise specified, the load period refers to a duty cycle of 10 min.

for example,

S6-40 % = 4 min load operation, 6 min no-load operation

S6-60 % = 6 min load operation, 4 min no-load operation

# Thermal time constant T<sub>th</sub>

The thermal time constant defines the temperature rise of the motor winding when the motor load is suddenly increased (step increase) up to the permissible S1 torque. The motor has reached 63% of its S1 final temperature after  $T_{th}$ .

# A.2 Environmental compatibility

# **Environmental compatibility**

- Environmental aspects during development When selecting supplier parts, environmental compatibility was an essential criteria.
   Special emphasis was placed on reducing the envelope dimensions, weight and variety of metal and plastic parts.
   Effects that impair paint-wetting can be excluded (PWIS test)
- Environmental aspects during production Supplier parts and the products are predominantly transported in re-usable packing. Hazardous materials do not have to be transported. The packing materials themselves essentially comprises paperboard that is in compliance with the Packaging Directive 94/62/EC. Energy consumption during production was optimized. Production has low emission levels.
- Environmental aspects for disposal
   Motors must be disposed of carefully taking into account domestic and local regulations in the normal recycling process or by returning to the manufacturer.
   The following must be taken into account when disposing of the motor:
   Oil according to the regulations for disposing of old oil (e.g. gearbox oil when a gearbox is mounted)
   Not mixed with solvents, cold cleaning agents or remains of paint
   Components that are to be recycled should be separated into:
  - Electronics scrap (e.g. encoder electronics, sensor modules)
  - Scrap iron
  - Aluminum
  - Non-ferrous metal (worm gears, motor windings)

# Appendix

A.2 Environmental compatibility

# More information

Siemens: www.siemens.com/simotics

Industry Online Support (service and support): www.siemens.com/online-support

Industry Mall: www.siemens.com/industrymall

Siemens AG Digital Industries Motion Control Postfach 31 80 91050 ERLANGEN Germany

Scan the QR code for more information about SIMOTICS.

